

Owner's Manual

Q5

Owner's Manual
English 09.2024
8MA012720AA



8MA012720AA

www.audi.com

Q5 Owner's Manual

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2024 AUDI AG

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.



WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 78*.

Table of Contents

Quick reference	6	Sitting correctly and safely	65
Getting started	6	Ensuring the correct seating position	65
About the Owner's Manual	6	Front seats	65
Using the digital Owner's Manual	7	Seat functions	67
FAQs	8	Rear seats	68
Front cabin	10	Steering wheel	69
Overview of warning and indicator lamps ..	11	Head restraints	70
Displays and controls	17	Seat belts	71
Instrument cluster	17	Airbag system	74
Overview and controls	17	Child restraint systems	78
Description of displays	18	Storage and convenience	84
Touch displays	20	Storage compartments	84
Gestures and input	20	Information on the ashtray	84
Overview of Multi Media Interface		Information on the cigarette lighter	84
displays	21	Information on power sources	84
Using and customising the MMI	24	Information on cup holders	85
Opening the Car menu	25	Luggage compartment	85
Head-up display	26	Roof carrier	90
Using the head-up display	26	Heating and cooling	91
Changing the head-up display settings	26	Air conditioner	91
Audi assistant	27	Auxiliary heating/ventilation	95
Functions and operation	27	Information on fluids in the air	
External voice control function	28	conditioner	96
Setting off	30	Driving	97
Personal settings	30	Starting the vehicle	97
Users	30	Driving the vehicle	99
Key user	31	Engine	103
Opening and closing	32	Start/stop system	105
Central locking system	32	Brakes	106
Occupant detection	38	Electromechanical parking brake	108
Keys	41	Special driving situations	110
Unlocking/locking	44	Handling dynamics	113
Boot lid	45	Audi drive select	113
Electric windows	49	Suspension	114
Panoramic glass roof	51	Steering	115
Garage door opener	52	Four-wheel drive (quattro)	115
Lights and vision	55	Electronic stabilisation control	116
Exterior lights	55	Towing a trailer	119
Interior lights	59	Driving the vehicle with a trailer or	
Clear vision	60	caravan	119
Wipers	62	Swivelling towing bracket	122
		Towing bracket with square tube	126
		Trailer assist	127

Driver assist systems	131	Parking systems	178
General information on assist systems	131	Parking aids with distance display	178
Overview of assist systems	131	Reversing camera/surround view cameras	180
Safety precautions and system limits of assist systems	132	Rear cross-traffic assist	185
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings	134	Assisted parking systems	187
Driver assist menu	136	Options for driving into or out of a parking space	187
General driver messages on driver assist systems	136	Finding a parking space for which you can use the assisted parking systems	187
Calling up the parking aid menu	136	Completing a parking manoeuvre into a measured space with the assisted parking system	188
Warning systems	137	Driving into and out of parking spaces with the park assist plus	189
Speed warning	137	Infotainment	193
Distance warning	137	Telephone	193
Side assist	138	Introduction	193
Exit warning	140	Calling up the telephone	193
Fatigue warning	141	Connecting a mobile phone	193
Distraction warning	142	Overview of telephone symbols	194
Lane assist systems	144	Calling up the telephone settings menu	194
Lane departure warning	144	Calling up the messages menu	194
Lane guidance	146	Using the telephone functions	194
Speed assist systems	149	Using text message functions	195
Speed regulation systems	149	Using the phone compartment	196
Adaptive cruise control	152	Troubleshooting options for telephones	197
Predictive cruise control	158	Audi connect	198
Combined assist functions	161	Information on Audi connect	198
Adaptive cruise assist plus	161	Using the internet in the vehicle	199
Systems for braking and taking evasive action	162	Audi connect services	199
Emergency assist	162	Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot	200
Active front assist	163	Store	201
Rear turn assist	166	Emergency call	202
Further assist systems	169	Emergency call systems	202
Predictive efficiency messages (efficiency assist)	169	Online roadside assistance	204
Camera-based traffic sign recognition	170	Information on data processing for the European Union	204
Hazard alerts	172	Navigation	207
Proactive occupant protection	173	Introduction	207
Traffic light information	175	Navigation system limits	207
Lap timer	176	Calling up the navigation menu	207
		Overview of navigation symbols	207

Table of Contents

Calling up the navigation settings menu	208	Service and care	226
Calling up the map content menu	208	Checking and topping up fluids	226
Entering a destination	208	Fuel	226
Using functions while route guidance is active	209	Filling the tank	227
Operating the map	210	Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)	230
Using map functions	211	Emission control system	233
Using traffic information	211	Engine compartment	235
Performing an online map update	212	Engine oil	238
Troubleshooting for the navigation	212	Cooling system	240
Radio	213	Brake fluid	244
Introduction	213	Electrical system	245
Operating the radio	213	Battery	245
Overview of radio symbols	213	Windscreen washer system	248
Calling up the radio settings menu	213	Service interval display	249
Using radio functions	213	Wheels	250
Media	216	Tyres and rims	250
Introduction	216	Loose wheel warning	254
Information on the use of mobile devices and media	216	Tyre pressure loss indicator	255
Connecting mobile devices and media	216	Tyre pressure monitoring system	256
Operating media	217	Information on run-flat tyres	259
Calling up the media settings menu	217	Care of vehicle and cleaning	260
Using media functions	217	Introduction	260
Information on supported media and file formats	217	Washing the vehicle	260
Troubleshooting for media	218	Information on cleaning and care	261
Interior entertainment	219	Taking the vehicle out of service	265
Introduction	219	Self-help	266
Using the themes function	219	Mobility	266
Using the experiences function	219	Introduction	266
Smartphone interface	220	Equipment	266
Introduction	220	Tyre repair kit	267
Connecting a smartphone	220	Changing a wheel	269
Troubleshooting for the smartphone interface	220	Jump-starting	271
Further settings	222	Towing away	273
Opening the settings menu	222	Fuses and bulbs	277
System settings	222	Changing fuses	277
Connection manager	222	Changing a bulb	280
Software update	223	Customer information	281
Legal information	224	Data protection	281
		Information on data protection	281
		Image recording	281
		Data recorders	281

Privacy settings	282
Information on data collection	284
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle	285
Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle	285
Accessories and replacement parts	286
Position for a toll device on the windscreen	287
Technical data	288
Identification data	288
Vehicle data	288
Other information	290
Information on brands and licences	290
Driving school mode	290
Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH	290
Information on waste disposal	290
Radio equipment	291
Additional customer information	294
Additional customer information for Taiwan	295
Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea	295
Information on the event data recorder for the Republic of Korea	295
Information on emissions and operating noises for the Republic of Korea	296
Index	297

Getting started

About the Owner's Manual

Introduction

The Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE

Read the Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that the Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Versions of the Owner's Manual

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country, the following versions of the Owner's Manual may be available:

Digital Owner's Manual and printed Owner's Manual

A digital Owner's Manual and a printed Owner's Manual are available for your vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

Only a printed Owner's Manual is available for your vehicle.

Supplements and updates to the Owner's Manual

Please bear in mind that Audi¹⁾ works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This may be done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. It may also be done by issuing software updates.

After a software update has been issued or a supplement has been published in digital form only, the information in the printed Owner's Manual may differ from the information in the digital Owner's Manual. In this case, the digital Owner's Manual contains the more up-to-date information.

Additional documents in the vehicle

MAKE SURE TO READ THE PRINTED DOCUMENTS AND KEEP THEM IN A SAFE PLACE

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country, additional documents may be included in your vehicle in printed form *only*. The information in these documents is intended to supplement or replace the information in the Owner's Manual. Read these documents carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that these documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Information on vehicle equipment

Vehicle-specific features

The Owner's Manual is not specific to your vehicle. It includes descriptions of all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is available for the entire model series. Some of the equipment described may therefore not be fitted in your vehicle. Standard and optional equipment is not marked. It is also possible that some equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

Equipment fitted

You can check whether a particular piece of equipment is fitted in your vehicle based on the following:



¹⁾ "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

- You can identify whether the vehicle body type described is applicable and see whether the controls, buttons, parts and other elements described are fitted.
- You can attempt to operate or change the settings for the functions, parts, and equipment described via the MMI or the instrument cluster.
- You can find the equipment or function in the vehicle details in the myAudi app ¹⁾.
- You can find the equipment or function in the equipment list in the sales contract.

If you do not find any evidence of the particular piece of equipment, you can conclude that it is not fitted in your vehicle. You can contact a qualified workshop if you are unsure.

Symbols and description conventions

Please note the following symbols and description conventions that are used in the Owner's Manual.

The symbols and cross-references may look different in the printed and digital Owner's Manuals.

► Section continued on next page

⇒ *page 74* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.



WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.



CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.



For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.



Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

Using the digital Owner's Manual

Availability of the digital Owner's Manual

Depending on the country, you may be able to access the digital Owner's Manual via:

- myAudi
- The infotainment system in the vehicle

The information is correct at the time of publication. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

Accessing the Owner's Manual via myAudi

Depending on the country, you may be able to access the Owner's Manual on your mobile device via myAudi. This function is not available for all mobile devices.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

- Go online to my.audi.com, or
- Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Accessing the Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Depending on the country, you may be able to view the Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- Select: > **Audi apps** > **Online manuals**.

¹⁾ The availability and functions of the myAudi app vary from country to country. A different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle.

Whenever you open the Owner's Manual, it is opened in the language selected as the system language on the MMI.

- To change the language, select:  > **Audi apps**
> **Online manuals** >  > **Change language.**

Application options

- Call up Owner's Manual content by chapter
- View supplements (if supplement is available)
- Call up available indicator lamps and their meanings
- Search for a certain key word in the index
- The text search function  can be used to search the entire contents of the Owner's Manual for your own search terms.



WARNING

You should only use the digital Owner's Manual when the vehicle is safely parked; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident.

FAQs

Before you set off

- How do I adjust the seats? ⇒ *page 65*
- How do I adjust the steering wheel?
⇒ *page 69*
- How does the selector lever work? ⇒ *page 100*
- What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? ⇒ *page 100*
- How does the electromechanical parking brake work? ⇒ *page 108*
- How can I keep the car free to roll? ⇒ *page 109*
- How do I adjust the exterior mirrors?
⇒ *page 60*
- How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇒ *page 62*
- Where is the windscreen washer container?
⇒ *page 237*
- How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇒ *page 256*
or ⇒ *page 258*
- How do I drive with a trailer or caravan?
⇒ *page 119*

Breakdowns and emergencies

- Where can I find the warning triangle?
⇒ *page 266*
- Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇒ *page 266*
- Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇒ *page 252*
- Which airbags are installed in my vehicle?
⇒ *page 74*
- Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇒ *page 273*

Useful functions

- How can I use a mobile phone as a key to the vehicle? ⇒ *page 32* or ⇒ *page 43*
- How can I open the boot lid with a foot gesture? ⇒ *page 47*
- How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇒ *page 152*
- How can I have the adaptive cruise assist system react automatically to speed limits and the road ahead? ⇒ *page 159*
- How can I stay in my lane more easily?
⇒ *page 146*
- How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇒ *page 144*
- How can I use the parking aid? ⇒ *page 178*
- How can I safely navigate blind exits and inter-sections where it is difficult to see? ⇒ *page 164*
or ⇒ *page 183*
- How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇒ *page 56*
- How can I drive off more easily? ⇒ *page 109*
- How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇒ *page 138, Side assist*
- How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇒ *page 113*
- How can I charge my mobile phone wirelessly?
⇒ *page 196*

Displays and controls

- How do I turn on the touch displays?
⇒ *page 24*, ⇒ *page 24*

- How can I deactivate the speed warning simply and quickly? ⇒ *page 24, Operating a function via the steering wheel button*
- How does the gesture control on the touch displays work? ⇒ *page 20*
- How do I use the MMI's user interface? ⇒ *page 21*
- How do I adjust the volume? ⇒ *page 24*
- How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇒ *page 20*
- How can I control functions such as the navigation system by voice? ⇒ *page 27*
- Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇒ *page 17, page 24*
- How can I have information displayed on the windscreen? ⇒ *page 26*
- How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇒ *page 60*

Infotainment

- How can I check which software version is installed in my vehicle? ⇒ *page 223*
- How can I update my vehicle's software in the vehicle? ⇒ *page 223*
- How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree system? ⇒ *page 193*
- How can I make calls in the vehicle with better reception and minimum radiation? ⇒ *page 196*
- How can I connect and manage mobile devices? ⇒ *page 222*
- How can I connect my smartphone with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto? ⇒ *page 220*
- How can I call up information online? ⇒ *page 198, Audi connect*
- How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇒ *page 200*
- What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇒ *page 208*
- How can I select alternative routes? ⇒ *page 210*
- How can I avoid traffic obstructions? ⇒ *page 210*
- How can I listen to the radio? ⇒ *page 213*
- How can I play media? ⇒ *page 217*
- How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇒ *page 216, Preparing to use media via Bluetooth .*

Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇒ *page 34*
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇒ *page 50, Convenience open/close function for windows/panoramic glass roof*
- How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇒ *page 47*
- How can I operate both sides of the air conditioner together? ⇒ *page 91*
- How can I deactivate the front passenger's air-bag? ⇒ *page 77*
- How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇒ *page 78*
- What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇒ *page 260*
- How can I see when the next service is due? ⇒ *page 249*

Front cabin

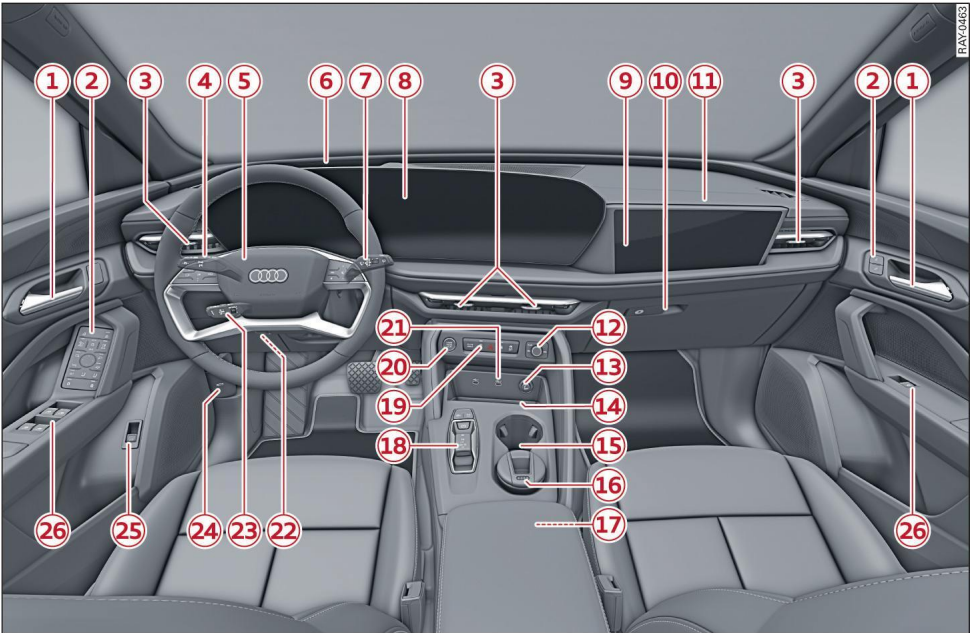


Fig. 1 Front cabin

Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models is slightly different. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

- ① Interior door handle
- ② Depending on equipment, controls for:
 - Central locking system 34
 - Lights 55
 - All-weather lights 55
 - Rear fog light 55
 - Adjuster for exterior mirrors 60
 - Memory function 68
 - Child lock 35
- ③ Vents
- ④ Control lever for:
 - Turn signals and main beam headlights 56

- Main beam assist 56
- Lane departure warning 144
- Lane guidance 146
- ⑤ Multi-function steering wheel with:
 - Horn 
 - Driver's airbag 74
 - Controls 17
 - Paddle levers 104
- ⑥ Head-up display 26
- ⑦ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 62
- ⑧ Panoramic display with:
 - Instrument cluster 17
 - Centre display 21
- ⑨ Passenger display
- ⑩ Lockable glove box
- ⑪ Front passenger's airbag 74
- ⑫ MMI control dial 24
- ⑬ Depending on equipment fitted:
 - Electrical socket 84
 - Cigarette lighter 84 ▶

14	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Storage compartment	
	– Phone compartment with inductive charging function	196
15	Cup holder	85
16	Ashtray	84
17	Centre armrest with storage compartment (depending on equipment): starting the vehicle in the event of a malfunction	98
18	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Button for driver assist systems	136
	– Button for parking systems	136
	– Switch for electromechanical parking brake	108
	– Selector lever	100
19	Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:	
	– Drive select	113
	– Start/stop system	105
	– Hazard warning lights	58
	– Auxiliary heating / ventilation	95
	– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)	117
20	START STOP button	97
21	USB ports with charging function	216
22	Steering wheel adjustment	69
23	Control lever for:	
	– Speed regulation systems	149
	– Adaptive cruise control	152
24	Bonnet lock release	236
25	Button for boot lid	45
26	Window control	49

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Introduction

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the vehicle is switched on and should go back out when the drive system is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

Red warning lamps

	Central warning lamp ⇒ page 11, instrument cluster ⇒ page 17
	Seat belt ⇒ page 73
	Engine start system ⇒ page 98
	Drive system ⇒ page 105
	Brake system ⇒ page 107, ⇒ page 244, electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 110
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 108
	Air suspension ⇒ page 115
	Steering ⇒ page 115
	Steering ⇒ page 115

	Lane departure warning intervention ⇒ page 144
	Take over steering prompt (lane guidance) ⇒ page 147
	Take over braking prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇒ page 153, ⇒ page 156
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 162
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 162
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 162
	Active front assist ⇒ page 165
	Swerve support ⇒ page 165
	Cross-traffic information ⇒ page 165
	Proactive occupant protection ⇒ page 173
	Park assist plus (fault) ⇒ page 192
	Software update ⇒ page 224
	AdBlue ⇒ page 230
	AdBlue ⇒ page 231
	Engine oil pressure ⇒ page 238
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇒ page 238
	Cooling system ⇒ page 241, ⇒ page 242

	Electrical system ⇒ page 245
	Loose wheel warning ⇒ page 254, ⇒ page 255

Yellow indicator lamps

	Central indicator lamp ⇒ page 11
	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 18
	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 18, drive system ⇒ page 105, cooling system ⇒ page 240, ⇒ page 241, ⇒ page 242
	Central locking system ⇒ page 35
	Occupant detection fault ⇒ page 40
	Battery in remote control key ⇒ page 43
	Bulb monitor ⇒ page 58
	Adaptive light ⇒ page 58
	Headlight range control ⇒ page 58
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇒ page 58
	Windscreen wipers ⇒ page 64
	Safety systems ⇒ page 75
	Engine start system ⇒ page 98
	Convenience key ⇒ page 98
	Gearbox ⇒ page 102

	Drive system ⇒ page 105
	Vehicle sound ⇒ page 105
	Brake system ⇒ page 107, brake servo ⇒ page 107, electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 110
	Brake pads ⇒ page 107
	Brake system ⇒ page 107
HOLD	Hold function ⇒ page 110
	Suspension control ⇒ page 115
	Air suspension ⇒ page 115
	Steering ⇒ page 115
	Steering ⇒ page 115
	Four-wheel drive ⇒ page 116, sport differential ⇒ page 116
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 117, ⇒ page 118
ESC OFF	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 118
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 118
	Anti-lock brake system ⇒ page 118
	Towing bracket ⇒ page 122, ⇒ page 122, ⇒ page 125

	Distance warning (fault) ⇒ page 138, active front assist ⇒ page 166, rear turn assist ⇒ page 168
	Side assist ⇒ page 139
	Exit warning system ⇒ page 141
	Fatigue warning ⇒ page 141, ⇒ page 142
	Distraction warning ⇒ page 142, ⇒ page 142
	Lane departure warning (fault) ⇒ page 146
	Take over steering prompt (lane guidance) ⇒ page 147
	Lane guidance (fault) ⇒ page 148
	Cruise control ⇒ page 152
	Adaptive cruise control (fault) ⇒ page 158, adaptive cruise assist (fault) ⇒ page 161
	Emergency assist (fault) ⇒ page 163
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇒ page 172
	Proactive occupant protection ⇒ page 174
	Parking aids ⇒ page 180
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 186
	Park assist plus (fault) ⇒ page 192
	Emergency call function ⇒ page 204

	Software update ⇒ page 224
	Fuel tank system ⇒ page 227, ⇒ page 234
	Emission control system ⇒ page 228, ⇒ page 235
	AdBlue ⇒ page 230
	AdBlue ⇒ page 231
	Particulate filter ⇒ page 233
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇒ page 238
	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇒ page 238
	Engine oil sensor ⇒ page 238
	Engine warm-up requested ⇒ page 238
	Cooling system ⇒ page 241
	Electrical system ⇒ page 245
	Washer fluid level ⇒ page 249
	Loose wheel warning ⇒ page 255
	Tyre pressure ⇒ page 256, ⇒ page 257
TPMS	Tyre pressure ⇒ page 256, ⇒ page 257

Further indicator lamps

	Occupant detection active ⇒ page 40
	Dipped headlights ⇒ page 55

	Side lights ⇒ page 55, dipped headlights ⇒ page 55
	Turn signals ⇒ page 56, ⇒ page 58
	Turn signals ⇒ page 56, ⇒ page 58
	Rear seat belt ⇒ page 73
	Start/stop system ⇒ page 106
HOLD	Hold function ⇒ page 109
	Trailer turn signals ⇒ page 120
	Lane departure warning (ready to give warnings on at least one side) ⇒ page 144
	Cruise control ⇒ page 150
LIM	Speed limiter ⇒ page 150
LIM AUTO	Predictive speed limiter ⇒ page 150
	Adaptive cruise assist (active) ⇒ page 153
	Speed limit (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159, speed limit (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169
	Speed limit lifted (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159
	Corner (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159, corner (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169

	Exit (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159, exit (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169		Main beam assist ⇒ page 56, ⇒ page 58
	Intersection (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159, intersection (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169		Rear seat belt ⇒ page 73
	Roundabout (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159, roundabout (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169		Auxiliary heating / ventilation ⇒ page 96
	Stop sign (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159		Convenience key ⇒ page 98
	Stop sign without detected stop line (predictive cruise control) ⇒ page 159		Brake system ⇒ page 107
	Gradient (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169		Brakes ⇒ page 110
	Vehicle ahead (predictive messages) ⇒ page 169		Trailer assist ⇒ page 130
	Main beam headlights ⇒ page 56, ⇒ page 57		Trailer assist ⇒ page 130
	Main beam assist ⇒ page 56		Speed warning function ⇒ page 137
	Engine ⇒ page 97		Distance warning (fault) ⇒ page 138
	Door lock ⇒ page 35		Side assist ⇒ page 139
	Child lock ⇒ page 35		Exit warning system ⇒ page 141
	Occupant detection with warning tone ⇒ page 40		Fatigue warning ⇒ page 141, ⇒ page 142
	Occupant detection ⇒ page 40		Distraction warning ⇒ page 142, ⇒ page 142
			Lane departure warning (switched on, not ready to give warnings) ⇒ page 144, lane departure warning (fault) ⇒ page 146
			Lane departure warning (switched off) ⇒ page 144
			Lane guidance (fault) ⇒ page 148

	Cruise control ⇒ page 150, ⇒ page 152
LIM	Speed limiter ⇒ page 150, ⇒ page 152
LIM AUTO	Predictive speed limiter ⇒ page 150
LIM!	Speed limiter ⇒ page 150
LIM AUTO !	Predictive speed limiter ⇒ page 150
	Adaptive cruise control (switched on but not active) ⇒ page 153, adaptive cruise control (fault) ⇒ page 158, adaptive cruise assist (fault) ⇒ page 161
	Emergency assist (cancelled) ⇒ page 163, emergency assist (fault) ⇒ page 163
	Emergency assist (switched off) ⇒ page 163
	Rear turn assist ⇒ page 168
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇒ page 172
	Proactive occupant protection ⇒ page 174
P 	Parking aids ⇒ page 180
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 186
P 	Park assist plus ⇒ page 192
P  OFF	Park assist plus (fault) ⇒ page 192
	AdBlue ⇒ page 230

	AdBlue ⇒ page 231
	Particulate filter ⇒ page 233

Overview of other symbols

	Information on automatically reset driver assist settings ⇒ page 136
	Temporarily deactivate intervention ⇒ page 185, ⇒ page 166

Instrument cluster

Overview and controls

Instrument cluster display areas

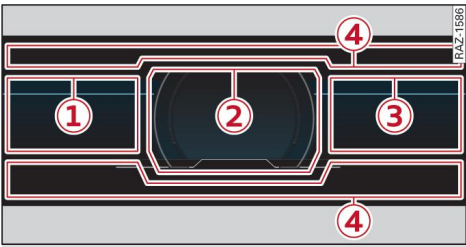


Fig. 2 Instrument cluster display areas

The instrument cluster display is divided into the areas described below. Which display areas are shown and what content is visible depends on the selected view and the Audi drive select mode.

Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display.

1 Left display area

The on-board computer is shown in the left display area. The content of the on-board computer is divided into several tabs.

The following content may be displayed:

- Date and time
- Mileage
- Consumption
- Short-term and long-term memories
- AdBlue range
- Lap timer

2 Central display area

The information shown in the central display area includes information on vehicle operation.

The following content may be displayed:

- Speed
- Navigation
- Driver assistance

3 Right display area

The infotainment content is shown in the right display area. The content is divided into several tabs.

The following content may be displayed:

- Radio/media
- Telephone
- Navigation

4 Status bar

The status bar has two sections – one at the top and one at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

The following content may be displayed:

- Warning and indicator lamps
- Remaining range
- Selected transmission position
- Outside temperature display ⇨ ⚠

⚠ WARNING

- The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp ⚠ may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.
- At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ❄. Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5°C – risk of accident!

Instrument cluster controls

You can change the brightness of the instrument cluster in the **Car** menu ⇨ page 25.

You can operate the instrument cluster using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Press once: Select left display area Press multiple times: Change tab in left display area
	Press once: Select right display area Press multiple times: Change tab in right display area
	Press or swipe: Scroll up/down within selected tab

Symbol	Function
	Press: Confirm selection Press and hold: Reset value/memory
	Press: Switch between standard and extended view

Changing how the instrument cluster looks

Changing the instrument cluster layout

The layout and the content shown in the central display area are linked to the Audi drive select modes.

- To change the layout, select a different Audi drive select mode.

You can customise the layout in the Audi drive select mode **balanced** or **individual**.

Changing between the standard and extended views

The instrument cluster has two views – the standard view and the extended view.

In the standard view, the central display area is shown and the tabs are always displayed.

In the extended view, the central display area is larger and the tabs are hidden.

- To switch between the standard view and the extended view, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- To display the left/right tab in the extended view, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel  / .

Description of displays

Information on the rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears after the engine has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or select transmission position D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Engine speed governing

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components, e.g. against overheating or when starting a cold engine.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp  will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **CAUTION**

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

Information on the engine oil temperature display

The engine oil temperature display  is only shown in certain Audi drive select modes, such as **dynamic** mode. The display is shown in the status bar.

The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80°C und 120°C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase significantly. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps  or  are not lit.

Information on mileage

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. This value can be reset manually.

The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Information on consumption

The current consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed.

Information on the short-term and long-term memories

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the vehicle is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the vehicle is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not reset automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Information on the gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode.

The symbol  after the current gear means **change up a gear**.

The symbol  after the current gear means **change up two gears**.



CAUTION

The gear shift indicator is intended to help the driver save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

Touch displays

Gestures and input

Gesture control for touch displays

Selecting a function or button

- ▶ Press the desired function or button.

Opening a context menu

For certain objects, you can open a context menu which is not immediately visible.

- ▶ Press and hold an object until the context menu is shown.

Moving objects

Certain objects can be moved, e.g. their position can be changed:

- ▶ Press and hold the object and move it to the desired position.
- ▶ You can create folders with several objects in certain areas by pressing and holding an object and dragging it on top of another one.

Switching between pages

The white bars at the bottom  indicate the position of the current page.

- ▶ To switch between pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

Scrolling through pages/lists

- ▶ To scroll through a page/list, swipe up/down with one finger.

Opening/closing a hidden view

- ▶ To open a hidden view, swipe from the edge (e.g. from the top or left edge) of the display towards the centre of the display.
- ▶ To close a hidden view, swipe from the centre of the display towards the edge, or press anywhere on the display.

Using sliders

- ▶ To change the scale of a slider, press the slider and drag it to the desired value, or

- ▶ Press on any position on the scale and drag the slider to the desired value.

Changing the view or angle

- ▶ Spread two fingers to make an object larger.
- ▶ Pinch two fingers together to make an object smaller.
- ▶ Use two fingers to turn an object.
- ▶ Swipe up/down with two fingers to tilt a 3D view.

Entering text on touch displays

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in entry fields, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system. You can enter characters or words using the keyboard, handwriting recognition or speech recognition.

Overview of keyboard symbols

Symbol	Description
	To change the input language
	To switch to handwriting recognition
	To switch to the keyboard
	To minimise the keyboard or handwriting recognition

Entering text

- Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the on-screen keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters¹⁾.
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area. You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark. ▶

¹⁾ May vary in different countries.

- Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right¹⁾ in the entry area.
- To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider²⁾ displayed on the screen.
- To delete a single character, press , or
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left¹⁾ in the entry area.
- To delete more than one character, press and hold .

Information on path descriptions

The path descriptions in the Owner's Manual show you how to open the app you require along with its settings and functions.

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. () , are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

Example of a path description

- ▶ Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Steering wheel button**.

Using a path description

- ▶ The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used. If the path description does not specify a particular display (e.g. "Select: ..."), it primarily applies to the centre display and may also apply to the passenger display. If the path description specifies a display, it only applies to this display.
- ▶ Press  in the direct access panel. The app overview will appear.
- ▶ Select the specified app in the app overview (**Car** in this example). If the **Car** app is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.

- ▶ In an app, the next element of the path description may be in a list or in the tab area. In this example, the **More** menu is in the tab area.
- ▶ Press **More**.
- ▶ If **Steering wheel button** is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press **Steering wheel button**.

Overview of Multi Media Interface displays

Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the touch function of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and configure the privacy settings.

Order of lists

Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.

Notes on traffic safety

Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion. In addition, Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.



WARNING

- Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!

¹⁾ If the input language is set to Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

²⁾ May vary in different countries.

- The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

Centre display user interface

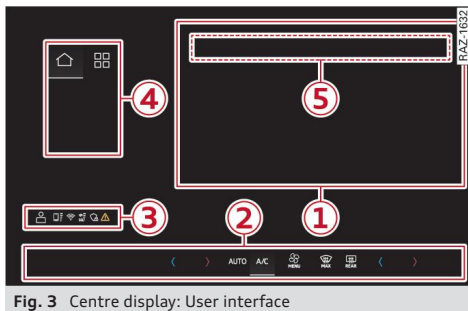


Fig. 3 Centre display: User interface

① Display area

Possible displays in the display area:

- Overview pages
- App overview
- App content

② Air conditioner control bar

The air conditioner control bar is always visible, even if the display is switched off.

③ Status bar

The status bar displays various pieces of information on the vehicle and connected devices, such as the connection status of a mobile phone or whether there is a driver message in the notification centre.

④ Direct access panel

You can add several apps of your choice from the app overview to the direct access panel. The objects  and  cannot be moved.

- To add an app to the direct access panel, drag it from the app overview to the direct access panel.

⑤ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be shown at the top of an app. The different objects in the tab area are used to navigate within the app.

Hidden views on the centre display

The hidden views are not always visible on the centre display and can be opened via gesture control. Hidden views include the quick access bar and the notification centre.

Opening/closing a hidden view via gesture

- To open the quick access bar, swipe from the side edge (e.g. from the left edge) of the display towards the centre.
- To open the notification centre, swipe from the top edge of the display towards the centre.
- To close a hidden view, swipe from the centre of the display towards the edge, or press anywhere on the display.

Quick access bar

The quick access bar contains a selection of functions and apps that can be accessed directly. The order of the objects can be customised.

Notification centre

Incoming notifications are hidden after a certain period and stored in the notification centre. A corresponding notification symbol appears on the side.

- To delete a notification from the notification centre, drag it to the edge of the screen.

Goodbye screen on the centre display

The goodbye screen is shown on the centre display before you leave the vehicle. It displays a range of settings that you can change before you get out of the vehicle.

- To show the goodbye screen, park the vehicle safely and press the **[START STOP]** button.

MMI passenger display user interface

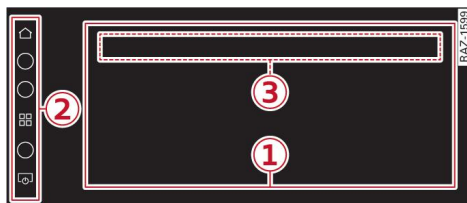


Fig. 4 Passenger display: Overview of user interface

① Display area

Possible displays in the display area:

- Overview page
- App overview
- App content

② Direct access panel

You can add several apps of your choice from the app overview to the direct access panel. The objects and cannot be moved.

③ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be shown at the top of an app. The different objects in the tab area are used to navigate within the app.

Overview of MMI symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all apps in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
	Call up overview page
	Open app overview
	Go back one level
	Close view
	Search for content
	Call up explanations
	Call up settings for selected app
	Change settings
	Store/delete favourite
	Switch functions on/off

Symbol	Description
	Call up additional functions
	Call up further information
	Delete object

Overview of symbols and functions in the quick access bar

The following table shows the functions that may be available in the quick access bar:

Symbol	Description
	Open configuration mode
	Open head-up display settings
	Switch lane departure warning on/off
	Open Car app
	Open Driver assist app
	Open interior lighting settings
	Open privacy settings
	Open sound settings
	Switch vehicle's Bluetooth interface on/off
	Switch vehicle hotspot on/off
	Switch Wi-Fi on/off
	Set system language
	Open connection manager
	Operate garage door opener

Overview of status bar symbols

The following table shows the symbols that may be shown in the status bar:

Symbol	Description
	A personalised user symbol is shown when a user is logged in. The symbol appears when the guest user is logged in. Press: To open user management
	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
	Wi-Fi hotspot connected

Symbol	Description
	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. Data transfer is in progress.
	One of the privacy settings is activated. The symbol shown depends on the privacy setting that is activated.
	Driver messages are available.

Using and customising the MMI

Adjusting the audio and system volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. from the Audi assistant) while it is being played.

Adjusting the volume using the MMI control dial

- ▶ To turn the volume up or down, turn the MMI control dial clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- ▶ To mute the sound, press the MMI control dial.

Adjusting the volume using the multi-function steering wheel

- ▶ To turn the volume up or down, press the **+** or **-** button.
- ▶ To mute the sound, press the  button.

 **WARNING**

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Changing the track/station

Changing the track/station using the MMI control dial

- ▶ To select the previous or next track/station, briefly push the MMI control dial to the left or right.

Changing the track/station using the multi-function steering wheel

- ▶ To select the previous or next track/station, press the **◀◀** or **▶▶** button.

Operating a function via the steering wheel button

The  button on the multi-function steering wheel can be used to operate a specific MMI function. You can select the function it accesses from a pre-defined list.

- ▶ To use the function that is currently programmed, press the  button.
- ▶ To find out which function is currently programmed or to change the function, press and hold the  button, or
- ▶ Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Steering wheel button**.
- ▶ Select a different function if desired.

Starting up/shutting down or restarting the MMI system

Starting up/shutting down the MMI system

- ▶ To shut down the MMI system, press and hold the MMI control dial until all the infotainment functions are shut down.
- ▶ To start up the MMI system, press the MMI control dial.

Restarting the MMI system

- ▶ Press and hold the MMI control dial for at least ten seconds.

Switching the displays on/off

Switching the centre display on/off

- ▶ To switch the centre display off, press and hold the MMI control dial for approximately two seconds.
- ▶ Press **Switch off display**.
- ▶ Touch the centre display to switch it on.

Switching the MMI passenger display on/off

- ▶ To switch the MMI passenger display off, press  on the MMI passenger display and select **Passenger display off**, or

- ▶ Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display off > Switch off.**
- ▶ To switch the MMI passenger display on, touch the MMI passenger display, or
- ▶ Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display on.**

Switching the standby design for the MMI passenger display on/off

The passenger display has a standby mode. Only a screensaver is displayed in this mode. You can change the screensaver in the **Car** menu
⇒ *page 25.*

- ▶ To switch the standby design on, press  and select **Standby design on**, or
- ▶ Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display off > Standby design.**
- ▶ To switch the standby design off, touch the MMI passenger display.

Customising the MMI system

Certain objects on the MMI can be customised. For example, some objects can be moved and context menus can be opened.

- ▶ To move an object, press and hold the object and drag it to the desired position.
- ▶ To open the context menu for a particular object, press and hold the object.

Customisation options

Depending on the area/object, you may be able to make the following customisations:

- You can arrange the apps in the app overview and the direct access panel in any order.
- In the app overview, you can delete downloaded apps via the context menu.
- You can create, rename and delete folders with multiple apps in the app overview.
- You can rearrange the information boxes on the overview pages or change the content of the information boxes via the context menu.

Creating and managing folders

- To create a folder, press and hold an object and drag it onto another object.
- To rename a folder, open the folder and press the name. Enter the desired name.

There is a context menu for each folder and the objects it contains. You can use this menu to remove individual objects from the folder or to delete the entire folder.

Changing the brightness of the MMI

You can change the brightness of the MMI in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25.*

Opening the Car menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the vehicle settings in the **Car** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- ▶ Select:  > **Car**, or
- ▶ Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press .

You can switch certain functions on/off by pressing  /  or change their settings by pressing .

Head-up display

Using the head-up display

The head-up display shows certain content in the driver’s field of vision, such as the speed. The available content of the head-up display is divided into several tabs.

Switching on/off

- ▶ To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel, or
- ▶ You can switch the head-up display on/off in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

Selecting the head-up display

The head-up display must be selected in order to use the tabs in the display.

- ▶ To select the head-up display, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Changing between tabs in the head-up display

Important: The head-up display must be selected.

- ▶ Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until the desired tab is displayed.

Operating the head-up display via the multi-function steering wheel

Symbol	Function
	Press and hold: Switch head-up display on/off
	Press: Select head-up display
	Press multiple times: Change tab in head-up display
	Press or swipe: Scroll up/down within selected tab
	Press: Confirm selection

Information on the head-up display

- The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.

- A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.

 **CAUTION**

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.

Changing the head-up display settings

You can change the head-up display settings in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 25*. For example, you can change the brightness, display height and content.

Adjusting the display height

The height of the display can be adjusted. To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, assume an appropriate seating position and make adjustments to the image of the head-up display.

Setting which information is displayed

You can determine which types of information are displayed on the head-up display. Some of the information and warnings cannot be hidden.

Audi assistant

Functions and operation

Introduction

The Audi assistant enables you to use a wide range of vehicle and infotainment functions via voice control. If there is an active internet connection, you can ask for online content such as the current weather or news. In addition, the Audi assistant tries to understand the logged-in user's behaviour in order to offer routines and proactive suggestions that make it easier and more convenient to operate the vehicle.

Using routines and proactive suggestions

Important: You must be logged in with a myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

Routines

If a recurring pattern of actions is identified, the Audi assistant can recommend a routine. If a routine is stored, it will be performed automatically when the appropriate conditions are fulfilled. For example, the climate control will be set automatically at a certain outside temperature. Routines cannot be performed in certain situations and may be forgotten.

You can switch automatically generated routines on/off or delete them in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇒ page 28. You can cancel a routine that has been performed by switched the function off or saying "*Hey Audi, reverse routine*". It is only possible to cancel a routine via voice command for a short time after the routine is performed.

Proactive suggestions

If you do not use certain functions, the Audi assistant can suggest that you use a particular function in an appropriate situation.

Error messages related to interactions with proactive suggestions are only given orally.

Switching routines and proactive suggestions on/off

You can switch routines and proactive suggestions on/off in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇒ page 28.

System limitations

Routines and proactive suggestions may be restricted if the GPS position is not clear.

The best way to use the Audi assistant

- ▶ Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- ▶ Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- ▶ Close any doors or windows, etc., to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- ▶ Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.



WARNING

- Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!
- The Audi assistant must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice may change in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Using the Audi assistant

Important: The vehicle and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the Audi assistant. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

No navigation cues or traffic announcements are played when a dialogue is active. ►

Activating via the button on the steering wheel

- Briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- Say the desired command.

Activating via a voice command

Important: You must have activated the activation phrase function in the **Audi assistant** menu
⇒ *page 28*.

- Say the activation phrase “*Hey Audi*” followed by the desired command.

In some countries it is possible to use the voice control function without saying the activation phrase. The following requirements must be met to do this:

- You must be sitting in the driver's seat.
- You must be the only person in the vehicle.
- You must have activated the simply start talking function in the **Audi assistant** menu
⇒ *page 28*.

Activating via the centre display ****

If the vehicle has an overview page for the Audi assistant, you can activate the system as follows:

- Open the overview page for the Audi assistant by pressing **** in area  ⇒ *page 22, Fig. 3*.
- Press **** on the overview page for the Audi assistant and say the desired command.

The overview page for the Audi assistant shows tips on how to use it, proactive suggestions and routines.

Cancelling voice control

- To cancel voice control, say “*cancel*” or press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel twice.

Commands and hints

The **Audi assistant** menu provides help on using the system ⇒ *page 28*.

- To receive context-dependent help for the current dialogue, say “*help*”.

Calling up the Audi assistant menu

You can change the settings for the system in the **Audi assistant** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- Select:  > **Settings** > **Audi assistant**.

Product improvement of online speech recognition

You can activate online speech recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the internet, spoken commands that are recognised will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

Before you activate online speech recognition, please read the terms of use . By activating the function, you agree to the terms of use.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

External voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone. Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The vehicle and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto or connected as a mobile phone ⇒ *page 223*. The connected mobile phone must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▶ To switch the external voice control function on, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▶ To switch the external voice control function off, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Operating the external voice control function

- ▶ Give a spoken command after the tone.
- ▶ To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Personal settings

Users

Introduction

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned their most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

- **myAudi user:** As a myAudi user, you can store individual settings and call them up again later. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may also be able to use some of these settings in other vehicles. You have access to Audi connect services and can use them in the vehicle.
- **Local user:** As a local user, you can only store your individual settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle that require a myAudi user.
- **Guest user:** As a guest user, you can store your settings in the vehicle without changing existing users' settings. Audi recommends only using the guest user temporarily as individual settings can only be stored in the current vehicle and cannot be stored permanently. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle that require a myAudi user.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system can recognise the active user before a journey when the driver's door is opened based on the following:

- Vehicle keys
- Digital key

Information for users with PIN protection

A PIN is stored for users with the  symbol. If you simply drive off or wait without entering the PIN for a recognised user, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings will be transferred to the guest user.

System limits of personal settings

- Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings, radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. Select:  > **Legal** > **Privacy**.
- The stored settings for myAudi users can only be transferred to other vehicles that are suitable. This capability may be restricted in certain countries. The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.



WARNING

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for the infotainment and vehicle settings – risk of accident!

Managing users

Selecting a user

- ▶ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- ▶ Press on the desired user.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Adding a user

- ▶ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- ▶ Press **Add user**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Editing a user

Important: You must have selected the relevant user and loaded their settings.

- ▶ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- ▶ Press on the user whose settings are loaded.

Depending on the user type, the following options may be available:

Change PIN protection: Users can be protected by a PIN. If a PIN is not applied, anyone in the vehicle can select the user.

Delete user from vehicle: The user is only deleted from the user management in the vehicle.

Change name: You can change the name of users. The guest user cannot be renamed.

Deleting a user

- ▶ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- ▶ Press and hold the desired user and press .

Key user

Introduction

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

Key users automatically have remote access rights. These are required in order to control certain functions (depending on the equipment in your vehicle) such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ▶ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app.
- ▶ Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

Removing the key user

Important: A key user must have been set.

If you remove the key user, all other users added by the key user will be deleted along with their permissions. It will no longer be possible to use

the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

All digital keys (depending on equipment) will be deleted.

The following options can be used to remove the key user:

Removing the key user in the myAudi app

- ▶ Open the myAudi app and remove the key user.

Removing the key user on the MMI

- ▶ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- ▶ Press **Key user** in the tab area.
- ▶ Press **Remove key user**.

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings.

Opening and closing

Central locking system

Safety information on the central locking system

WARNING

- Always switch off the vehicle and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safe-lock mechanism is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside
⇒ *page 37, Information on the anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

Introduction

Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.

The central locking system has the following functions/features:

- All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on

the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇒ *page 33*.

- The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.
- When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇒ *page 44*
- Sensors in the door handles ⇒ *page 44*
- Digital key on your mobile device (e.g. mobile phone) ⇒ *page 43*
- Digital key card ⇒ *page 43*
- Lock on the driver's door ⇒ *page 36*
- Lock button in the boot lid  ⇒ *page 46*
- Interior central locking switch ⇒ *page 34*
- Via voice control using the Audi assistant
⇒ *page 27*.

Key/vehicle key

The term "key" may refer to the remote control key or convenience key, a mobile device with the digital key or the activated digital key card.

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key. The convenience key is a remote control key with special functions ⇒ *page 44* and ⇒ *page 97*.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake. ►

Accidental lock-out

If, after you have locked the vehicle, the turn signals flash several times and a warning tone¹⁾ sounds when you close a door or the boot lid, the vehicle key or digital key that was last used is still inside the vehicle ⇒ .

It is not possible to detect a digital key with a flat battery or a digital key card in the vehicle ⇒ .

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from locking your vehicle key or digital key inside the vehicle in the following situations:

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the  button on the vehicle key or touching the locking sensor on one of the doors. The locking sensor is not fitted on all vehicles.
- If the most recently used vehicle key or digital key is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇒ .
- If the most recently used vehicle key or digital key is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to close the boot lid with a foot gesture ⇒ *page 47*, with the  button on the vehicle key or with the  button in the boot lid. The  button is not fitted in the boot lid on all vehicles.



WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 32*.



CAUTION

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

- If the most recently used vehicle key or digital key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key or digital key with you and lock the

vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.

- If the turn signals flash several times and a warning tone sounds¹⁾, this means that after the vehicle was locked with the convenience key or digital key while a door or the boot lid was still open, the door or boot lid was then closed and the most recently used convenience key or digital key was detected in the vehicle. Open the door or the boot lid immediately and take the convenience key or digital key out. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically with the convenience key or digital key inside (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).
- Important: Your vehicle must have a digital key or a digital key card. If you lock the vehicle with a digital key (with an empty battery) or your digital key card when a door or the boot lid is still open and then put the digital key / digital key card down inside the vehicle and close the door or boot lid, the digital key / digital key card will not be detected and will therefore be locked inside the vehicle.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

You can adjust the settings for the central locking system in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

Doors to unlock

- If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
- If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the  button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door



¹⁾ Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the  button.

You can also change the settings via voice control using the Audi assistant.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panoramic glass roof can be opened using the vehicle key ⇒ *page 50, Convenience open/close function for windows/panoramic glass roof*. Pressing and holding the  button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panoramic glass roof.

Lock when driving (Auto Lock)

To prevent unauthorised access from the outside (e.g. when stopped at traffic lights), you can set the system to automatically lock the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the  button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

After an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Disable boot lid handle

You can select whether the luggage compartment can be opened via the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ *page 46, Fig. 10*. When this function is activated, the boot lid can only be opened using the  button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. On vehicles with convenience key or digital key, the release catch on the boot lid can still be used to open the luggage compartment if an authorised convenience key or digital key is detected ⇒ *page 45*.

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking¹⁾

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle via the sensor on the door. It is still possible to lock the vehicle via sensor ⇒ *page 44*.

Opening and closing boot lid with foot gesture at rear of vehicle

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off ⇒ *page 47*.

Interior monitor

You can switch the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock on/off ⇒ *page 37*.

Information on the central locking switch

The central locking switch ( /  buttons) is in the door trim.

► To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the  /  button ⇒ .

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- Once a door has been opened from the inside, it can then also be opened from the outside as well. Press the lock button  on the central locking switch again in order to prevent the doors from being opened from the outside. ►

¹⁾ This function is not available in all countries.

- After an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

**WARNING**

- Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 32*.
- The central locking switch also works when the vehicle is switched off.
- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages about the central locking system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Vehicle electronics: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. Please contact workshop

There is a fault in the vehicle electronics. Apply the parking brake to hold the vehicle before getting out. The transmission position will be shifted to P automatically when you do so. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



Central locking: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the central locking system. If it is not possible to lock the doors via the central locking system, you can lock them manually ⇒ *page 36*. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



Door lock: when the vehicle is moving, door can only be opened via manual release. See owner's manual

The doors cannot be unlocked electrically at speeds above approx. 15 km/h. If you need to open the door in an emergency when the vehicle is travelling at a higher speed, you can manually release the door by pulling the handle out firmly twice. You will feel noticeable resistance when

you do so. You may need to press the door handle back into its original position after doing this.

Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop soon

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the  button again.

If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle key detected in vehicle interior

or

Vehicle key detected in boot

This driver message appears if a vehicle key or digital key is detected in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and a door or the boot lid is then closed. The vehicle also reacts by flashing the turn signals several times and issuing a warning tone¹⁾. Remove the vehicle key or digital key without delay. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically and the vehicle key or digital key will be locked in the vehicle (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).

**WARNING**

If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Switching the child lock on/off

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

The child lock buttons  are located in the driver's door trim.

- To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the electric window controls and interior door handle on each of the rear doors), press the left/right button . The LED in the button will light up or go out.

¹⁾ Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window controls and door handles are out of action.

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

- The rear interior door handles.
- The rear electric window controls.
- The air conditioner console in the rear cabin. In this case, changes made to the settings on the front air conditioner control console are also applied to the air conditioner console in the rear cabin ⇒ *page 92, SYNC Synchronising*.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 32*.
- If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

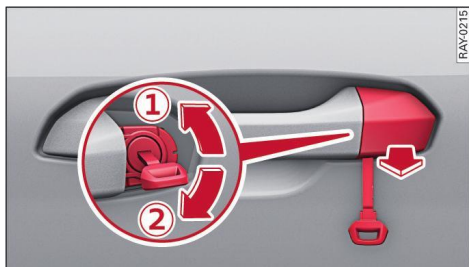


Fig. 5 Driver's door lock



Fig. 6 Door: Locking the door manually

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, the doors will have to be locked/unlocked separately.

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Switch on the vehicle or press the  button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- Take out the emergency key ⇒ *page 41*.
- Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap ⇒ *Fig. 5*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the emergency key to the unlock position **①** ⇒ *Fig. 5*.
- Then open the driver's door.
- To lock the driver's door, select transmission position P, close the door and turn the key to the lock position **②** once ⇒ *page 32*.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors manually

Use the emergency key or a screwdriver to lock the doors manually.

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Take out the emergency key ⇒ *page 41*.
- If necessary, pull the cap out of the opening ⇒ *Fig. 6*.
- Insert the emergency key or the screwdriver in the slot inside the door and turn it as far as the stop to the left (if the door is on the right side) or to the right (if the door is on the left side) ⇒ *Fig. 6*.
- If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the vehicle is without electrical power, pulling the door handle once will unlock the door; pull a second time to open the door. You will need to pull firmly and will feel noticeable resistance. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 32.

Information on the anti-theft alarm system

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the panoramic glass roof are closed.

After you have locked the vehicle, the alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism.

Switching the alarm off manually

- To deactivate the alarm, press the  button on the vehicle key or switch the vehicle on.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked via the lock cylinder.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

Safelock¹⁾

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇒ . For more information on the safelock mechanism, please refer to ⇒ page 38, *Driver messages about the anti-theft alarm system*.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor and tow-away protection and the safelock mechanism¹⁾

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism:

- Press the  button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**, or
- Touch the sensor ⇒ page 44, Fig. 9 on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. This only works if the vehicle is fitted with the convenience key function. Or
- Select the **Interior monitor** function in the **Car** menu ⇒ page 25.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED on the door sill will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.

**WARNING**

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

¹⁾ This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

CAUTION

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.

Driver messages about the anti-theft alarm system

The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch the vehicle off as a reminder that the safelock mechanism
⇒ *page 37, Safelock* will be activated.

Occupant detection

Introduction

The purpose of the occupant detection system is to warn the driver and the key user if there could be other persons, especially children, on the rear seats after the vehicle has been switched off.

The occupant detection system is designed to reduce the risk of accidentally leaving someone behind in the vehicle.

Before locking the vehicle, make sure that there are no persons or animals still in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, different occupant detection systems may be used.

Indirect occupant detection without sensor

The system monitors whether the rear doors are opened. If one of the rear doors has been opened, the system assumes that there could be someone on the rear seats ⇒ *page 40*.

Direct occupant detection with sensor

A radar sensor in the headliner detects whether there are persons on the rear seats. If this is the case, different warning levels may be triggered
⇒ *page 38, How the direct occupant detection system works*.

WARNING

Never leave persons or animals unsupervised in the vehicle, even if the vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system.

How the direct occupant detection system works

The warning concept features three escalating warning levels. Important: The system must have detected persons on the rear seats.

The occupant detection system can be deactivated on the MMI ⇒ *page 40, Setting the occupant detection system*.

The occupant detection system operates based on movements detected in the rear cabin.

The warning levels are initiated in the following cases:

- If persons are detected in the rear cabin after the end of the journey.
- If persons are detected in the rear cabin after a door is opened and then closed again while the vehicle is stationary.

Warning level 1

A driver message appears in the instrument cluster and is accompanied by a notification sound. Ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

Warning level 2

Important (starting from warning level 2): The occupant detection system must be activated on the MMI system. Parts of warning levels¹⁾ 2 - 3 also require the myAudi app to be installed on your smartphone.

¹⁾ May vary in different countries.

If all doors are closed and rear passengers have been detected, the vehicle's turn signals flash and the horn sounds after a short period. In addition to this, you will receive a warning message on your smartphone via your vehicle's Bluetooth connection within the wireless range.

Return to your vehicle and ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

Warning level 3

If you have still not reacted to warning level 2 after approx. 2 minutes, the vehicle's turn signals flash and the horn sounds intermittently in order to attract the attention of other persons in the vicinity. In addition to this, the key user's smartphone receives a warning message.

Return to your vehicle and ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

If you are the key user and have received the warning although you are not the driver, contact the driver without delay to inform them of the warning.

Deactivating warning levels

The warning levels (2 - 3) can be deactivated on a temporary or permanent basis. If the system is deactivated, you will receive a corresponding message when you switch your vehicle on.

- Temporary: After warning level 1 is triggered, a slider appears on the goodbye screen on the centre display which enables you to deactivate the warning levels until the next journey. If warning levels 2 and 3 are active, you will be able to deactivate them using a function which appears on the centre display. If you deactivate the occupant detection system temporarily, it will be activated again automatically for the next journey.
- Permanent ⇒ *page 40, Setting the occupant detection system.*



WARNING

Important: For all functions of the direct occupant detection system to work, you as the

key user must have installed the myAudi app on your smartphone and your phone number must have been entered in the app. Otherwise, a warning message cannot be sent to the key user's smartphone, potentially putting lives at risk.



CAUTION

- If an emergency rescue operation is required for persons or animals locked in the vehicle, it may result in material damage to your vehicle.
- A rescue operation by the emergency services may incur financial expenses for you.
- When using the occupant detection system, make sure that the regulations applicable in your country permit parked vehicles to sound their horn, for example.

System limits and function limitations of direct occupant detection

System limits

The vehicle's front row of seats and the luggage compartment are not detected by the sensor.

The occupant detection system is designed to detect persons, especially children, in the rear cabin. Animals may not be detected.

Function limitations

The following factors may affect whether the occupant detection system functions correctly:

- Vehicles passing by may cause the stationary vehicle and therefore any objects in the rear cabin to vibrate; this could trigger a false alarm.
- Objects such as vessels containing liquids left in the rear cabin could cause a false alarm. You should transport such objects safely in the luggage compartment.
- Rear backrests which have not been folded into their end position could cause a false alarm.

Other possible influences:

- Strong radar sources in the area around the vehicle, e.g. radio masts
- myAudi app not installed

- No mobile network connection
- Smartphone without Bluetooth connection
- Smartphone in flight mode
- Low charge level of 12-volt vehicle battery



WARNING

- The driver is always responsible for other persons and animals in the vehicle – danger to life!
- Persons or animals which are covered in heavy blankets may not be detected fully or at all by the sensor.
- Objects such as cardboard boxes in the rear cabin may impair the function of the radar sensor.
- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
- Drivers who are not stored as the key user will not receive a warning on the myAudi app via the mobile network. The occupant detection system warns the key user if a person or animal has been left behind in the vehicle via a warning on the myAudi app.
- The system does not perform any active interventions which could protect persons or animals left in the vehicle from death due to heat exposure.

Setting the occupant detection system

You can adjust the settings for the occupant detection system in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

The following settings are possible:

Rear notification sound

On vehicles with indirect occupant detection, you can switch the notification sound for the driver message in the instrument cluster on/off.

Tone when leaving vehicle

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can switch the notification sound for warning level 1 on/off.

Notification when journey starts

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can select whether you want a driver message to appear when starting a journey if someone is detected on the rear seats.

Rear occupant detection

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can switch the system on/off. If the system is deactivated, a corresponding driver message appears every time the vehicle is switched on.

Notifications relating to direct occupant detection

When the system is active, the indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster when the vehicle is switched on, for example.

If someone is detected in the rear cabin at the start of a journey, this is indicated to the driver on the centre display.

Driver messages about the occupant detection system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Rear occupant detection: fault. See owner's manual

Check if the rear headliner is covered by any objects and remove any such objects, if necessary. Taller persons on the rear seats may also cause the sensor to be obstructed. If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



Please check rear seats!

or



Please check rear seats and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual

At the end of each trip, a driver message will appear on the centre display to remind you that someone may be seated on the rear seats. If you previously opened one of the rear doors, the driver message will also appear in the instrument cluster. Make sure that you do not leave any persons or animals behind when you leave the vehicle.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇒  in *Information on the anti-theft alarm system on page 37*

 /  **Please do not leave any children or animals in the vehicle.**

Or

 /  **Please do not leave any children or animals in the vehicle and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual**

Make sure all occupants have left the vehicle before you get out yourself and/or lock the vehicle.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇒  in *Information on the anti-theft alarm system on page 37*

Keys

Information on the keys



Fig. 7 Key supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

② Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

- activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag ⇒ *page 77*. The front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated on all vehicles.
- lock the doors manually ⇒ *page 36*.
- release the boot lid manually ⇒ *page 49*.

Information on the vehicle key

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- You can see how many vehicle keys are initialised for your vehicle in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.
- A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.

Digital key card

Important: Your vehicle must have a digital key card. The digital key card performs a number of the functions of the vehicle key and is approximately the size and shape of a credit card
⇒ *page 43*.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

Applies to vehicles with digital key / digital key card: If you lose a mobile device on which a digital key is stored, the corresponding mobile device must be deactivated ⇒ *page 43*. If you do not have short-term access to the myAudi app, it is possible to deactivate all assigned digital keys on ►

the MMI ⇒ *page 43, Activating/deactivating the digital key function*. If you lose the digital key card, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the vehicle on with the vehicle key or digital key. Alternatively, you can deactivate the function in the myAudi app. To replace a digital key card, please contact an Audi dealer.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 32*.

CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

For the sake of the environment

 Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ *page 290, Information on waste disposal*.

LED and battery in vehicle key



Fig. 8 Vehicle key: Removing battery cover

LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① lights up when you press the buttons.

- ▶ The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- ▶ The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- ▶ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

A driver message appears when the key battery is empty ⇒ *page 43, Driver messages about the key battery*.

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ *page 41* and insert it into the opening ⇒ *Fig. 8*.
- ▶ Push the emergency key into the opening in the direction of the arrow to press the release button inside ②. Do not try to prise open the cover when doing so, as this could cause damage.
- ▶ Pull the cover off the battery compartment.
- ▶ Insert the new battery with the “+” symbol facing up.
- ▶ Close the battery compartment with the cover.
- ▶ Insert the emergency key.

WARNING

A button cell is fitted in the vehicle key.

- If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
- Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
- Keep new and used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
- Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
 ⇒ *page 290, Information on waste disposal.*

Driver messages about the key battery

If the indicator lamp  lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced
 ⇒ *page 42, Replacing the battery in the vehicle key.*

Information on the digital key function

You can use your mobile device to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with the digital key function. A key user who has been verified by a dealer must be set. You and all other users must use a compatible mobile device.

Activating/deactivating the digital key function

If you deactivate the function, all digital keys that have been assigned and the digital key card can no longer be used temporarily. All assigned digital keys and the digital key card can be used again as soon as you reactivate the function.

Important for deactivating: At least one digital key must be activated.

- ▶ Select:  > **Digital key > Management**
- ▶ Activate/deactivate the digital key by pressing .
- ▶ Follow any instructions given on the MMI and on your mobile device.

Setting up a mobile device

Before you use a digital key for the first time, you must make sure all the requirements are met. If all the requirements are met, an e-mail with a link will be sent to the key user. Once the e-mail has been received, you can set up the digital key as follows:

- ▶ Open the automatically generated e-mail on your mobile device.

- ▶ Click on the link in the automatically generated e-mail on your mobile device.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on your mobile device to set up a digital key in the wallet app.

It can take several minutes for the automatically generated e-mail to be sent. Check the spam folder if necessary.

Sharing a digital key

- ▶ Open the wallet app on your mobile device to manage digital keys.
- ▶ Share the desired digital key in the wallet app.
- ▶ The recipient must follow the instructions on their mobile device to activate the digital key.

Displaying the digital key

- ▶ Select:  > **Digital key > Management > Digital key.**

Removing a digital key

The key user can remove a digital key from the mobile device via the wallet app. Alternatively, the digital key can be removed as follows via the MMI if the vehicle was switched on with the key user's digital key:

- ▶ Select:  > **Digital key > Management > Digital key.**

Recipients of the digital key can also return it via their wallet app.

Information on the digital key function

- In some countries, you can manage digital keys via the myAudi app.
- As the key user, you can deactivate digital keys that have been issued at any time.
- The digital key function may stop working if the mobile device remains uncharged for several days.
- Whether the function is available also depends on the mobile device's manufacturer.

Information on the digital key card

Important: You must have a digital key
 ⇒ *page 43.* Your vehicle must have a digital key card and the key card must be activated. You can ▶

use your digital key card to lock/unlock
⇒ *page 44* and start ⇒ *page 97* the vehicle.

This prevents you from having to give your mobile device to others e.g. for a service appointment or if you require roadside assistance. Once activated, the key card can be used until the next time the vehicle is switched on with a vehicle key or digital key.

The vehicle can then be driven and locked or unlocked with the digital key card. However, it is not possible to unlock the boot lid separately.

Activating/deactivating the digital key card

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Switch the vehicle on using the digital key (mobile device) ⇒ *page 97*.
- Place the key card in the phone compartment
⇒ *page 196, Using the phone compartment*.
Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the vehicle is switched on using a digital key or a vehicle key. Once deactivated, the key card can therefore be stored in the vehicle.

You can check the status of your key card on the MMI ⇒ *page 44*.



For the sake of the environment

- ♻ Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ *page 290, Information on waste disposal*.

Calling up the digital key status

Applies to vehicles with digital key: The status of assigned digital keys and the digital key card can be checked in the myAudi app and in the vehicle.

- Select: > **Digital key** > **Management**.

Unlocking/locking

Locking and unlocking the vehicle manually



Fig. 9 Door handle: Sensor for locking the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇒ *page 33*.

Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button
⇒ *page 41, Fig. 7*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.

Unlocking/locking via sensors

Important: The vehicle must be equipped with a convenience key and door sensors. The vehicle key or digital key must be on your person.

- To unlock the vehicle, take hold of the door handle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇒ *Fig. 9*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

Unlocking/locking using the digital key / digital key card

Important: The vehicle must be equipped with door sensors and the digital key/digital key card must be activated ⇒ *page 43, Information on the digital key function* / ⇒ *page 43, Information on the digital key card*.

- To unlock/lock the vehicle, hold the mobile device/key card against the centre of the driver's ►

door handle. If your mobile device is connected via Bluetooth, you do not need to hold it against the door handle to unlock/lock the vehicle.

- ▶ To unlock the doors/boot lid, take hold of the door handle/release catch on the boot lid.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇒ Fig. 9. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

Information on the vehicle key

Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.

The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm. In this situation, press the unlock button .

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with a convenience key or digital key. The convenience key or digital key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) on the MMI ⇒ page 33.

To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.



WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 32.

Boot lid

Information



WARNING

- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 37, *Information on the anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. The safelock mechanism is not available on all vehicles. The anti-theft alarm system is not available on all vehicles.
- Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
- If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid

or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!

- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

! CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

Opening/closing boot lid

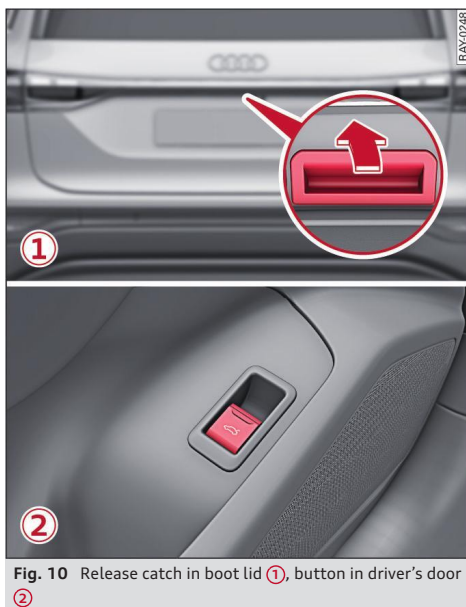


Fig. 10 Release catch in boot lid ①, button in driver's door ②

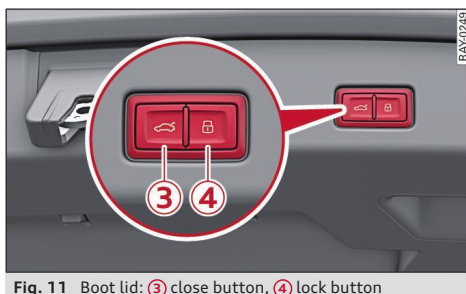


Fig. 11 Boot lid: ③ close button, ④ lock button

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇒ in *Information on page 45*.

Opening boot lid

There are several ways to open the boot lid:

- ▶ Press the release catch on the boot lid ①
⇒ Fig. 10. The vehicle key or digital key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked, or
- ▶ With the vehicle switched off, press the button on the vehicle twice ⇒ page 41, Fig. 7, or
- ▶ Briefly pull the button ② in the driver's door ⇒ Fig. 10, or
- ▶ Unlock the vehicle or boot lid with the / button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ①.

You can change the settings on the MMI to activate/deactivate the option for opening the luggage compartment via the release catch
⇒ Fig. 10 ⇒ page 33.

Closing boot lid

There are several ways to close the boot lid:

- ▶ Press the button ③ ⇒ Fig. 11 inside the boot lid, or
- ▶ With the vehicle switched off, press the / button ③ / ④ inside the boot lid. The vehicle key or digital key must not be in the vehicle. If you press the button ④, the vehicle will be locked after the boot lid is closed. If you press the button ④ and the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or out of range (more than approx. 1.5 m away), a warning tone will sound and the boot lid cannot be closed, or
- ▶ With the vehicle switched on, pull and hold the button ② in the driver's door ⇒ Fig. 10 until the boot lid is closed, or
- ▶ If the button ④ is fitted in the boot lid, with the vehicle switched off, press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. There will be a slightly delay before it closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 3 m).

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- ▶ You press button ③ or the release catch ① on the boot lid ⇒ Fig. 10 again, or
- ▶ You press the  button on the convenience key once. The convenience key is not available for all vehicles, or
- ▶ If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press button ③ or the release catch on the boot lid ① again, the boot lid will close/open again.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- ▶ Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- ▶ Press button ③ on the inside of the boot lid for at least 5 seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- ▶ To set a higher open position, wait for 5 seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- ▶ Then press button ③ again for at least 5 seconds to store the desired open position.

Once the stored open position has been reached, you can open the boot lid fully by pressing the  button twice within 3 seconds.

Opening/closing boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly, less effort will be required.

- ▶ Pull the boot lid down slightly and then push the boot lid down until it closes.

Information on the boot lid

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the  button on

the vehicle key twice. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

If the convenience key or digital key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the  button on the boot lid will not function. The  button is not fitted on all vehicles.



WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 45.

Opening/closing boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)



Fig. 12 Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

Important: Your vehicle must have a sensor-controlled boot lid.

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇒  in Information on page 45.

Important: The vehicle must be switched off. You must have the convenience key or digital key on your person and the foot gesture control and convenience key functions must be activated on the MMI. You must be standing to the left of centre ① behind the boot lid.

Depending on the model version, upon approaching the left side at the rear of the vehicle, you can see an illuminated spot on the ground in darker conditions indicating where to perform the foot gesture.

Activating/deactivating function

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off in the central locking ⇒ page 33, ►

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system or Car menu ⇒ *page 25.*

Opening/closing the boot lid

The turn signals flash to indicate that the boot lid is opening.

An acoustic signal is given to indicate that the boot lid is closing. If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid is opened, it will be locked again automatically after the boot lid is closed.

► To open/close the boot lid, swing your foot forwards and back very closely under the bumper ① without touching it in one single fluid movement ⇒ *Fig. 12.* Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open/close when the system detects the gesture.

If the boot lid is fully open, it will be closed with a delay as soon as you move away from the vehicle and there are no keys in the vicinity of the boot lid. A warning tone will sound until the boot lid starts closing. If you move back towards the vehicle while the boot lid is closing automatically, it may open again.

If you have used the foot gesture to close the boot lid but remain in the vicinity of the boot lid for an extended period, the automatic delayed closing function is cancelled. This is accompanied by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You perform the foot gesture again.
- You press the button ③ ⇒ *page 46, Fig. 11* or the release catch ① ⇒ *page 46, Fig. 10* on the boot lid again, or
- You press the  button on the convenience key, or
- If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press the button ③ ⇒ *page 46, Fig. 11* or the release catch on the boot lid ① ⇒ *page 46, Fig. 10*, the boot lid will close/open again.

Information on using the foot gesture function correctly

The boot lid will open/close only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening/closing in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- In heavy rain.
- If the bumper is very dirty (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- If the radio signal from the convenience key or digital key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).
- If the boot lid is open and the convenience key or digital key is in the luggage compartment or passenger compartment. In this case, the boot lid cannot be closed via foot gesture.

Information on incorrect use

The boot lid could open unintentionally if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person in certain situations, for example:

- When sweeping under the rear bumper.
- If exposed to a strong jet of water or steam.
- When repair work is performed on or near the rear bumper.
- By gates moving in the area near the bumper.

You can deactivate the foot gesture control for the boot lid to prevent the function from being triggered incorrectly ⇒ *page 47, Activating/deactivating function.* ►

**WARNING**

- Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 45.
- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person while you are behind the vehicle – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally (and could hit the garage ceiling) if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person while you are behind the vehicle.
- Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys unintentionally within the area of detection around the sensors ① ⇒ Fig. 12 for the boot lid.

**CAUTION**

Deactivate the foot gesture control for the boot lid on the MMI ⇒ page 47, *Activating/deactivating function* to prevent the boot lid from being opened unintentionally in the following situations:

- When you park the vehicle close to obstacles such as streetlights, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling
- Before washing the vehicle
- When using a car wash
- Before any maintenance and repair work on the vehicle
- Before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer

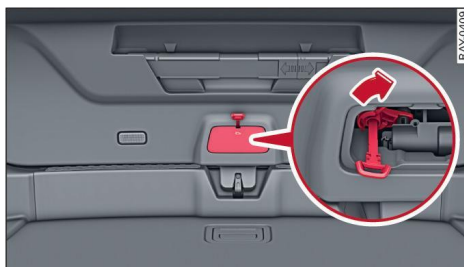
Releasing the boot lid manually

Fig. 13 Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

Use the emergency key or a screwdriver to release the boot lid manually.

- ▶ Fold the rear seat backrest forwards
⇒ page 88.
- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41.
- ▶ Prise off the cover ⇐ in the boot lid trim using the emergency key or a screwdriver.
- ▶ To unlock the boot lid, use a suitable tool (such as a screwdriver or the emergency key) to press the release lever in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

**WARNING**

- Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 45.
- After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Electric windows**Opening/closing windows**

The window controls are located in the door trim. You can also operate the windows via voice control using the Audi assistant ⇒ page 27.

Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All windows have two-stage controls:

- ▶ To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the control  briefly to the second position. The window will stop moving immediately if the control  is operated again.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the control  to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

Fault in voice control function for electric windows

If the electric windows temporarily cannot be controlled via the Audi assistant:

- ▶ Check whether the one-touch open/close function is working ⇒ *page 50, What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate.* or
- ▶ Use the controls in the door trim.

What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate

You may be able to reactivate the one-touch open/close function if it fails to operate.

- ▶ Pull and hold the electric window control  until the window is fully closed.
- ▶ Release the control  and then pull it again for at least one second.

Information on using the window switches

- The windows can be operated with the control  for a few minutes after the vehicle has been switched off. The window controls are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
- The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the control  until the window is fully closed.

Convenience open/close function for windows/panoramic glass roof

Convenience open/close function for windows/panoramic glass roof

Important: Your vehicle must have a convenience key or digital key.

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the panoramic glass roof are opened all at once ⇒ *page 33, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system.*

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the panoramic glass roof is open/closed ⇒ , or
- ▶ Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with door sensors. Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor on the door handle ⇒ *page 44, Fig. 9* until all the windows and the panoramic glass roof are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the panoramic glass roof are closed.

If the roof blind is closed when you open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 32.*
- Take care when closing the windows and the panoramic glass roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and panoramic glass roof when you are approx. 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight.
- To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the panoramic glass roof when pressing the  button to close them. The closing procedure stops immediately when you release the  button.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 32.*
- Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.

Panoramic glass roof

Operating roof blind for panoramic glass roof

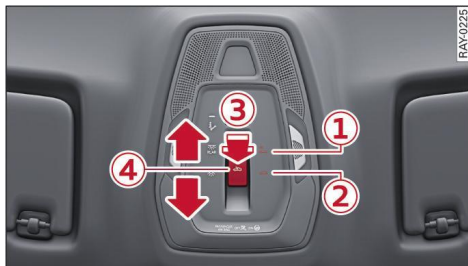


Fig. 14 Headliner: Switches for panoramic glass roof and roof blind

Important: Your vehicle must have a panoramic glass roof.

- ① Open roof blind
- ② Close roof blind
- ③ Tilt open and close panoramic glass roof
- ④ Open and close panoramic glass roof and roof blind

The switch ④ has two stages.

You can also operate the panoramic glass roof and the roof blind via voice control using the Audi assistant ⇨ *page 27*.

If the roof blind is closed when you tilt/slide open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

Operating the roof blind

The roof blind provides protection against the sun.

The roof blind cannot be closed completely when the roof is open.

- ▶ To open or close the roof blind fully: Briefly press the ☀ / ⇄ switches ① / ② in the headliner. You can stop the automatic operation at any position by pressing the switches again.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position: Press and hold the switch ① / ② until the blind has reached the desired position.

Operating the panoramic glass roof

- ▶ To tilt open or close the sunroof: Briefly press the ⇄ switch ③ in the headliner.
- ▶ The roof blind must already be open to do the following. To open/close the sunroof: Briefly slide the ⇄ switch ④ in the headliner backwards/forwards to the second position.
- ▶ The roof blind must already be open to do the following. To set an intermediate position: Slide or pull the ⇄ switch ④ to the first position until the roof reaches the desired position.

Opening/closing quickly

The roof and roof blind can also be opened at the same time.

- ▶ Briefly slide the ⇄ switch ④ backwards to the second position twice.

You can interrupt the quick opening/closing procedure by pressing the ⇄ switch again.

Closing the panoramic glass roof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the sunroof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. Remove the object and trigger the closing procedure manually.

- ▶ Within 5 seconds of the sunroof opening automatically, slide the ⇄ switch ④ forwards until the sunroof is closed.

Information on operating the panoramic glass roof

- The sunroof and the blind can still be operated for a few minutes after the vehicle is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
- The sunroof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.



WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 32*.
- Take care when closing the sunroof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch the vehicle off and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

CAUTION

Always close the sunroof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.

– Do not allow looking at the displays and operating the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.

Garage door opener

Introduction

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with a garage door opener.

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electrical devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight¹⁾ hand-held transmitters.

Information on selling the vehicle

– Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings ⇒ *page 222*.

Information on compatibility of the garage door opener

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

- You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
- You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) in the **Car** menu on the MMI ⇒ *page 25*.

WARNING

– When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.

Operating the garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ *page 53*, *Programming the garage door opener*, the vehicle must be within range of the system and must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system:

- ▶ You can operate the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*. After opening this menu, press on  for the relevant system, or
- ▶ Open the quick access bar ⇒ *page 22*, *Hidden views on the centre display*. Activate the desired function, or
- ▶ Click on the desired function in the display area ⇒ *page 22*, or
- ▶ Important: Your vehicle must have a GPS link. If you have stored the location of the system, press on the notification centre ⇒ *page 22*, *Hidden views on the centre display* on the centre display. The button will appear in the notification centre on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system, or
- ▶ Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with the parking aid/reversing camera/surround view camera. When you select reverse gear, the parking aid/reversing camera/surround view camera is shown on the centre display. To display the buttons for the first three garage door openers, press the  button, then press the appropriate button for the system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, a driver message for the system will be shown.

¹⁾ The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

Programming the garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

Programming hand-held transmitters

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program. If you program more than three hand-held transmitters, assign the first three slots to the systems you want to use in reverse gear.

- ▶ You can program systems for the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*. After opening this menu, press . Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- ▶ You can **reprogram** systems that have previously been programmed for the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*. After opening this menu, press the  button for the system you would like to reprogram. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener function will be available immediately after programming. For others, the garage door opener function must also be synchronised.

Synchronising¹⁾ hand-held transmitters

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

You can **synchronise** hand-held transmitters in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

- ▶ After opening this menu, press the  button for the system you would like to synchronise and press **Synchronise**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Storing the location

Important: Your vehicle must have a GPS link. For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system (GPS link).

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ *page 53* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- ▶ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI, or

If you wish to store the location of a system that you programmed earlier:

You can **store** the location in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

- ▶ After opening this menu, press the  button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of and press **Change position**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

The notification centre can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press **All garage doors**.

Renaming a system

You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

- ▶ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI, or

If you wish to rename a previously programmed system:

You can **rename** the system in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

- ▶ After opening this menu, press the  button for the system you would like to rename and press **Change name**. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Deleting a system

The programmed systems can be deleted individually. ▶

¹⁾ Applies only to rolling code systems

Opening and closing

You can **delete** systems in the **Car** menu

⇒ *page 25*.

- After opening this menu, press the  button for the system you would like to delete and press .

Information on programming a hand-held transmitter

- Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
- The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
- It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Information on universal receivers

If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.

- Switch the vehicle on.
- You can **program** the alternative mode in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.
- After opening this menu, press and hold the  button.
- Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 15 Driver's door: Light switch module

① Light switch module

Press ① repeatedly until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the vehicle is switched on.

- AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
-  – You can turn on the dipped headlights as soon as you have switched the vehicle on.
-  – You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
- OFF – You can switch all of the light functions off at speeds below 10 km/h.

When the dipped headlights  or side lights  are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

When the side lights  are switched on and the vehicle is switched off, a corresponding indicator lamp will light up in the light switch module.

When the daytime running lights are activated, only the front lights are switched on. On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights are also switched on.

② All-weather light

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are not dazzled, for instance when driving on a wet road.

③ Rear fog light

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

Information on the exterior lighting

- If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
- The driver is responsible for complying with the relevant country-specific regulations when using the lights while driving and parking the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → *page 132 to* → *page 134*.
- The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights  in these conditions and when driving after dark.

Using the turn signal and main beam lever

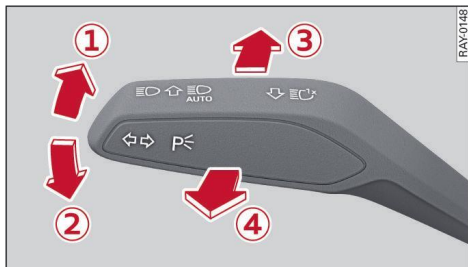


Fig. 16 Turn signal and main beam lever: Switching light functions on/off

Turn signals ⇐⇨ and parking lights P⏏

The turn signals will flash if you move the turn signal and main beam lever while the vehicle is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp  or  will flash. If you just tap the turn signal and main beam lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the vehicle switched off:

- ① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)
- ② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the vehicle is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights  and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beams and headlight flasher

- Move the turn signal and main beam lever to the appropriate position:

- ③ Main beam headlights on
- ④ Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

When the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher  are switched on, a corresponding indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Switching the main beam assist on/off

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The lights must be set to AUTO. The **main beam assist** must be switched on in the **exterior lighting** menu → page 57.

- Briefly press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp  is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- Briefly press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to activate the main beams manually. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- Pull the turn signal and main beam lever towards you to deactivate the main beams manually. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the turn signal and main beam lever towards you to flash the headlights. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
- The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Information on automatic light functions

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

Adaptive light

The adaptive light provides better visibility in the dark. The light is adapted according to the road characteristics, e.g. for motorways, major roads, intersections and corners. The adaptive light fea-

ture can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

You can switch the exterior lighting functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various menu options may be available in the settings menu .

Digital light signatures

You can choose between different light signatures. Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, the light signature is always active in conjunction with the daytime running lights and/or the tail lights.

In some countries, when you change the light signature, the new light signature will not be applied until shortly after you leave the vehicle.

The signatures displayed in the menu may differ from those displayed in the lighting settings.

Main beam assist

You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry and exit lights

The entry and exit lights illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the vehicle switched off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. The headlights and tail lights are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

Communication lights

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the communication lights display light signatures via the daytime running lights and the tail lights. A light signature in the front daytime running lights and the tail lights can indicate the status of automatic parking. A warning signature can be shown in ►

the tail lights if a hazardous situation is identified.

Dipped headlights - activation time

You can set when the dipped headlights are activated. This changes the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting  to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Switching the hazard warning lights on/off



Fig. 17 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the  button  to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps  and  both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically¹⁾.

You can use the turn signal and main beam levers to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even

when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the vehicle is switched off.

Driver messages about the exterior lighting

If the indicator lamp  lights up, a bulb has failed.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive light feature is not working. The dipped headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later. ►

¹⁾ This function is not available in all countries.

 **Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual**

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Interior lights

Switching the front interior lights on/off



Fig. 18 Headliner: Interior lights

Buttons for interior lights

- ①  – Interior lights on/off
- ②  – Rear interior lights on/off

Touch-sensitive reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ③ to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To dim the reading light, touch the surface ③ when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Switching the rear interior lights on/off

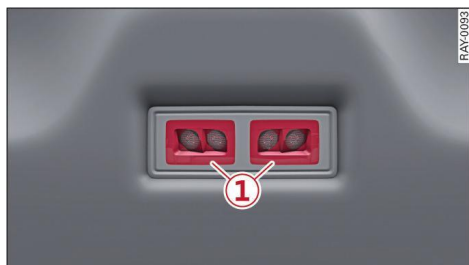


Fig. 19 Headliner: Rear reading lights

Reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ① to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To dim the reading light, touch the surface ① when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

On some versions, the reading lights are on the side.

Background lighting settings

The background lighting turns on when the vehicle is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

You can change the settings for the background lighting in the **Car** menu ⇒ page 25.

Available settings:

- You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting individually for the linear and surface lighting.
- You can also select from several defined colour settings.
- You can set the linear and surface lighting to change according to the Audi drive select mode.

Functional background lighting settings

The functional background lighting uses the linear and surface lighting to indicate when certain functions are activated and to provide warnings about hazards. For example, it can show an activated turn signal or provide a warning if one of the doors is open. The main component of this lighting is a light strip at the bottom edge of the windscreen.

You can switch the functional background lighting on/off for certain functions and change the brightness in the **Car** menu ⇒ page 25.

The functional background lighting is always switched on for certain functions.

Adjusting the display brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster and the displays in the **Car** menu

⇒ page 25.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

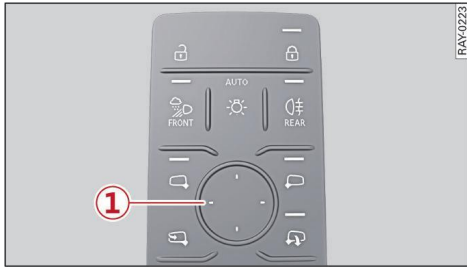


Fig. 20 Driver's door: Control panel for exterior mirrors

The buttons for adjusting the exterior mirrors are on the control panel in the driver's door.

↔ – To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror, press on the control panel ① in the desired direction.

↔ – To fold in the exterior mirrors. To fold the mirrors back out, press ↔ again. One of the centre display settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle.

↔ – To select the kerb function.

The mirror heating is activated via the rear window heating. If you deactivate the rear window heating, the exterior mirror heating will remain activated until the vehicle is switched off.

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Kerb function

Select this function to obtain a better view of the kerb, such as when reversing into a parking space. The kerb function can only be activated when the vehicle is in reverse gear.

- ▶ Press ↔ to activate the kerb function.
- ▶ Select the left and/or right exterior mirror.

- ▶ Adjust the mirror position using the control panel if necessary.

The vehicle stores the user's last settings. When you select reverse gear, an LED next to the symbol for the mirror on the control panel will flash to indicate that the function is activated.

The mirror returns to its original position:

- If you switch the vehicle off.
- If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h.
- If you switch the kerb function off by selecting it again.



WARNING

Convex or wide-angle exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Do not fold electrically retractable exterior mirrors in or out by hand! Always use the electrical power control.

Anti-dazzle setting

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

- The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.

The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.



WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.



CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Information on the sun visors



Fig. 21 Headliner: Sun visor

Sun visors

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings ① and turned towards the doors.

Make-up mirrors

- Slide the make-up mirror cover ② to the side. The mirror light will be switched on.

Using the side blinds



Fig. 22 Rear door: Side blind

- Pull out the side blind on the rear door and hook it into the retainer at the top of the door frame.

Wipers

Using the windscreen wipers



Fig. 23 Wiper lever: Windscreen wipers



Fig. 24 Wiper lever: Rear window wiper

► Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

① Wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the **Car** menu [page 25](#) (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥.

② Slow wipe

③ Fast wipe

④ Single wipe. If you hold the wiper lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a

while. Single wipe also works when the vehicle is switched off.

⑤ Wash/wipe . The number of wipe and extra-wipe cycles depends on how long you hold the wiper lever in position ⑤.

The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the wiper lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch the vehicle on.

The headlight washer system only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the wiper lever to position ⑤.

⑦ Rear wipe . The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑧ Rear wash/wipe . The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the wiper lever in position ⑧. The reversing camera is also washed (depends on the vehicle's equipment).

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the

windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.

- Switch the wipers off (wiper lever in position ①) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

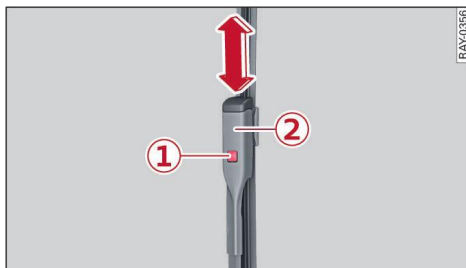


Fig. 25 Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

Activating the wiper change position

Important: The bonnet must be closed.

- Switch the vehicle off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ ⇒ page 62, Fig. 23 and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
- To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch the vehicle on and hold the windscreen wiper lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the wiper change position on/off on the centre display:

- Switch the windscreen wipers off (position ①) ⇒ page 62, Fig. 23).
- Select: > Car > More > Wiper change position.

Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇒ table on page 261.

Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Keep hold of the wiper blade.
- Press the release button ① on the wiper blade.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm ②.
- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- Switch off the wiper change function.



WARNING

Old or dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident! Clean the wiper blades if they become dirty. Change the wiper blades once or twice a year. You should also change the wiper blades if they are no longer able to provide a clear view that is safe for driving, e.g. if the wiper blades become damaged.



CAUTION

- The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never move your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade



Fig. 26 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Cleaning the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇒ *table on page 261*.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.



WARNING

Old or dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident! Clean the wiper blades if they become dirty. Change the wiper blades once or twice a year. You should also change the wiper blades if they are no longer able to provide a clear view that is safe for driving, e.g. if the wiper blades become damaged.

Driver messages about the wipers

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the wiper functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching the wipers on later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

Sitting correctly and safely

Ensuring the correct seating position

Safety information on seating positions

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇒ *page 65*.
- The steering wheel is set correctly ⇒ *page 69*.
- The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇒ *page 60*.
- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇒ *page 70*.
- Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇒ *page 71*.
- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 77*.
- Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇒ *page 78*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒  in *Safety information on child restraint systems on page 78*.

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle oc-

cupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.



WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

Front seats

Safety information on the front seats

Ensure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
- Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
- Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion.
- The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back.

- You have a good view of your surroundings.
- You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display.

Use only one control at a time to adjust the seat.

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly secured.
- Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

- The electric front seat adjustment also works when the vehicle is off. To avoid injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the headliner or sunroof (if fitted). This could cause damage.

Manual adjustment of front seats



Fig. 27 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- ▶ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever **1** and move the seat.
- ▶ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever **2**.

Adjusting the backrest

- ▶ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob **3**.

Adjusting the thigh support

- ▶ To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle **4** and slide it in either direction.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

- ▶ To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/press the lever **5**.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▶ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button **6**.

Electric adjustment of front seats

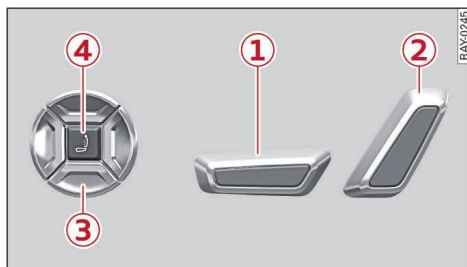


Fig. 28 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The basic settings can be adjusted using the buttons.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button ① forwards/backwards.
- To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button ① upwards/downwards.
- To tilt the seat cushion, press the front area of button ① upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the backrest

- To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button ② forwards/backwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ③.

Massage function

Press button ④ to switch the massage function on/off.

Seat functions

Seat settings on the MMI

You can use the MMI to adjust further seat settings and switch functions on/off.

- Select: > Car > Message.

The settings can be operated via the MMI. Which settings are available depends on the vehicle's equipment.

Using the massage function on the front seat

- Press the button on the front seat to switch the massage function on/off.

The **Message** menu will be displayed.

- Other functions may be available depending on the vehicle's equipment and can be operated via the MMI.

The massage function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

Using the elevated entry function

The elevated entry function gives improved access to the vehicle.

You can switch the elevated entry function on/off or adjust the settings in the **Car** menu → page 25.

Information on the front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Lift the centre armrest to move it out of its initial position. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press the button.
- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press and hold the button to close the centre armrest.
- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, to adjust the angle, press and hold the button and move the centre armrest to the desired position.
- Fold the centre armrest down to return it to its initial position. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press and hold the button.



WARNING

- In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit the movement of the driver's arms – risk of injury!
- Applies to centre armrest with button: Loose objects can be flung around in the

passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.

Using the memory function

Introduction

The memory function enables you to store and call up seat profiles. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to store various settings in the seat profiles, such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors.

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Storing seat profile

- ▶ Press the **[SET]** button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▶ Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

Calling up seat profile

- ▶ Press one of the numbered recall buttons and follow any instructions given by the system.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
- To avoid injuries (such as trapping fingers), the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat – risk of injury!

Rear seats

General information

WARNING

- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.

- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Seat adjustment



Fig. 29 Adjusting the seat position



Fig. 30 Adjusting the backrest

Adjusting the seat position

- ▶ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ⇒ Fig. 29 and move the seat.
- ▶ Release the bar and move the seat further until it locks in position.

Adjusting the backrest

- ▶ Hold the backrest with one hand while pushing the lever ⇒ Fig. 30 upwards with the other.
- ▶ Move the backrest forwards/backwards to the desired position.
- ▶ Release the lever and keep moving the backrest until it locks in place.

Steering wheel

Safety information on the steering wheel

Ensure that:

- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
- Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
- You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display at all times.
- You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.



WARNING

- Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
- If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

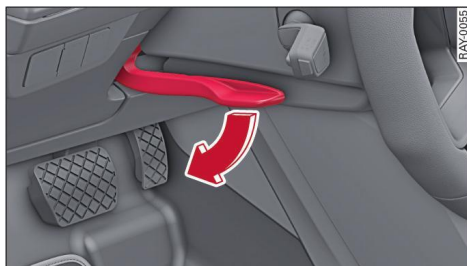


Fig. 31 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Pull the lever in the direction indicated (arrow).

- Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.



WARNING

- Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
- Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

Adjusting the steering wheel position (electric adjustment)



Fig. 32 Steering column: Button for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted electrically to suit the driver.

- To adjust the steering wheel in the desired direction, press the corresponding point on the switch.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the vehicle is switched off.

Head restraints

Safety information on the head restraints

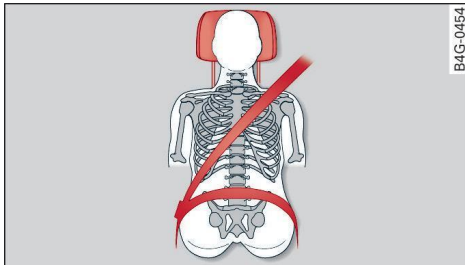


Fig. 33 Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

- The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
- The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
- The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

WARNING

- There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
- Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇒ page 78. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Adjusting the front head restraints

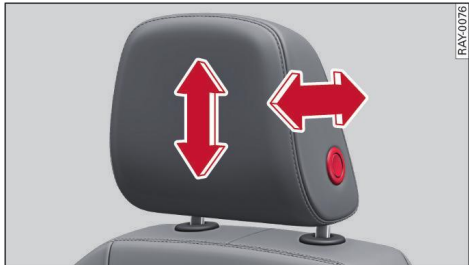


Fig. 34 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- To move the head restraint forwards, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To raise or lower the head restraint or move it backwards, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Adjusting the rear head restraints

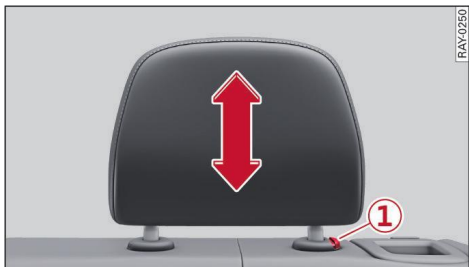


Fig. 35 Rear seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- To raise the centre head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To raise the outer head restraint, press the button ① and move the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

- To lower the head restraint, press the button ① and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing/installing rear head restraints

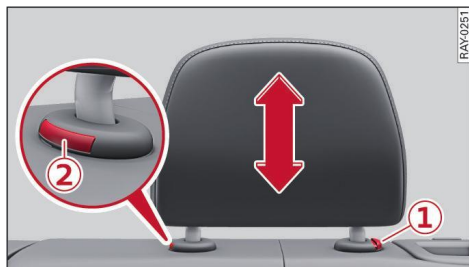


Fig. 36 Rear seat: Removing/installing head restraint

Removing head restraint

Important: On vehicles with folding backrest, the backrest must be folded down.

- Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- Press the buttons ① and ② at the same time and pull the head restraint out of the backrest
⇒ ⚠ in Safety information on the head restraints on page 70.

Installing head restraint

Important: On vehicles with folding backrest, the backrest must be folded down.

- Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- Press the button ① and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

Safety information on the seat belts

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are

wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.
- In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
- Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the same seat belt.
- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇒ page 65.

- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇒ *page 261*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Information on the correct positioning of seat belts

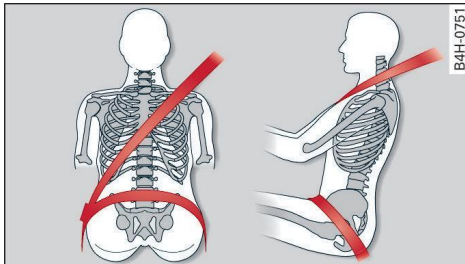


Fig. 37 Positioning seat belts over lap/shoulder



Fig. 38 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇒ *Fig. 37*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇒ *Fig. 38*.



WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
- The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
- The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward

movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.

- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
- During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.



CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt



Fig. 39 Latch plate and buckle

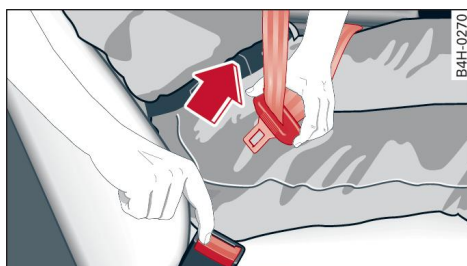


Fig. 40 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Fastening the seat belt

- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ Fig. 39.
- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

- Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇒ Fig. 40. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Overview of seat belt warning and indicator lamps

 – If the warning lamp lights up/flashes, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened during driving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

The status of the rear seat belts is also monitored by the following indicator lamps:

 – If the indicator lamp lights up, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied.

 – If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

Adjusting seat belt height



Fig. 41 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting ② upwards. ►

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 71.

- ▶ To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism ① and slide the guide fitting ② downwards.
- ▶ After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Information on belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Information on belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Information on seat belt retraction

After the seat belt is unbuckled, it is rolled up by an electric motor in the reversible belt tensioner.

Information on belt tensioners

Reversible belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened after you drive off or in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Irreversible (pyrotechnic) belt tensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants. Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.



WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Airbag system

Safety information on the airbag system



WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened → page 65. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions → page 78.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, on the centre armrest, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards, learn over the centre armrest, or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows, on the centre armrest and in the footwell.
- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.

- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The side airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with centre airbags. The centre armrest must remain closed while the vehicle is in motion. The

centre front airbag inflates from the driver's seat backrest and the protection it provides would otherwise be seriously impaired.

- As the driver, it is your responsibility to ensure that you and your passengers do not hold any devices connected with the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, controller) in front of your torsos or heads when sitting in a seat which is protected by an active airbag system.

Further safety information on airbag system for Republic of Korea

에어백 관련 주의 사항

1. 특히 13세 미만의 어린이는 에어백 팽창-충격으로 피해를 입을 수 있습니다.
2. 어린이에게는 뒷좌석이 안전합니다.
3. 유아용 보조의자는 앞좌석에 설치하지 마십시오.
4. 에어백에서 가능한 멀리 떨어져 착석하십시오.
5. 좌석 안전띠와 어린이 보호 장치를 사용하십시오.

Fig. 42 Further safety information on airbag system for Republic of Korea

Overview of indicator lamps for safety systems

The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch the vehicle on.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch the vehicle on, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Overview of airbags

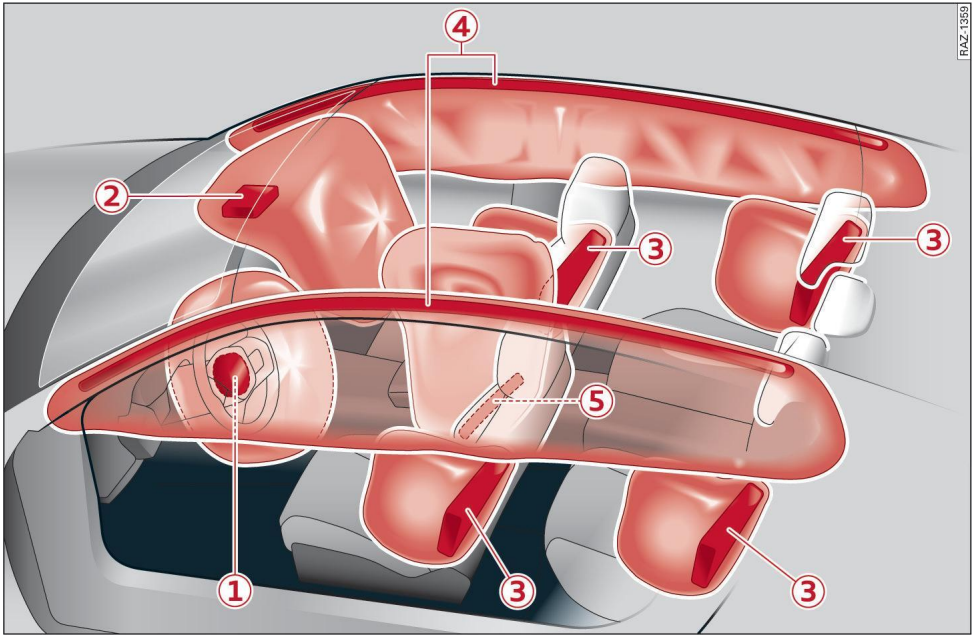


Fig. 43 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

- ① Driver's airbag
- ② Front passenger's airbag
- ③ Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
- ④ Head-protection airbags
- ⑤ Centre front airbag (if applicable)

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

How the airbags work

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. ►

As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the vehicle is switched on.

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag



Fig. 44 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 45 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇒ *page 79*. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- Take out the emergency key ⇒ *page 41* or take the glove box key out of the glove box.

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the key to the **OFF** position in the key-operated switch ⇒ *Fig. 44*. The indicator lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will light up and remain lit.
- To reactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the key to the **ON** position. The indicator lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will light up briefly.

WARNING

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check while driving that **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** remains lit at all times.
- Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! In this case, while driving, always check that **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** is not lit.

Child restraint systems

Safety information on child restraint systems



Fig. 46 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker



Fig. 47 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker for Taiwan

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.

- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation → page 70. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do

NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.

- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no other alternative than to use a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. In this case, while driving, always check that **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  remains lit at all times. If **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  does not light up, remove the child restraint system and re-install it according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. If **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  still does not light up, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to a qualified

workshop and have the airbag system checked.

- If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.
- The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

Information on the right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

Audi recommends child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇒ *table on page 80*, ⇒ *table on page 81*.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in

exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables ⇒ *table on page 80* and ⇒ *table on page 81* to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

- Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
- Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇒ *page 77*.

Sitting correctly and safely

- Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems
- Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front pas-

senger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area.

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint system	ISOFIX size category	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat	
		Outer	Centre	Front passenger's air-bag on	Front passenger's air-bag off
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
	D/R2				
	C/R3				
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D/R2	IL	X	X	IL
	C/R3				
	B/F2	IL, IUF	X	X	IL
	B1/F2x				
	A/F3				
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
i-Size child restraint system	F2x/R2/B2	i-U	X	X	i-U

- **ISOFIX size category:** The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
- **IL:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISO-FIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **IUF:** Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
- **i-U:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
- **X:** Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat	
	Outer	Centre ¹⁾	Front passenger's air-bag on	Front passenger's air-bag off
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

- **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
- **L**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
- ¹⁾: Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

Information on child restraint systems

- Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
- For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISO-FIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISO-FIX anchorages



Fig. 48 Rear seat: Bottom ISO-FIX anchorages



Fig. 49 Front passenger's seat: Bottom ISO-FIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 78.

The bottom ISO-FIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and (on some vehicles) on the front passenger's seat. There are two bottom ISO-FIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISO-FIX or i-Size child restraint ►

system, according to the table ⇒ *table on page 80*.

- ▶ Activate the child lock ⇒ *page 35*.
- ▶ Open the flaps for the two ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▶ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the seat ⇒ *page 83*.



WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.



WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 78*.

- ▶ Activate the child lock ⇒ *page 35*.
- ▶ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
- ▶ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇒ *page 83*, if possible.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage



Fig. 50 ① Rear backrest / ② Back of front passenger's seat: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

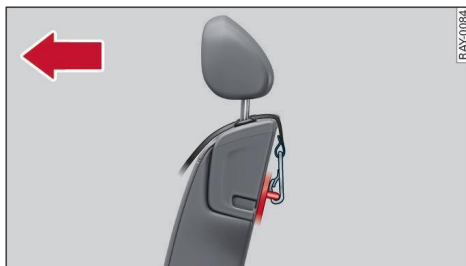


Fig. 51 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- ▶ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇒ Fig. 51. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- ▶ Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ▶ If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

! WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 78.

The top tether anchorages for additionally securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap are located behind the outer rear seats. Depending on the country, additional top tether anchorages may be fitted behind the centre rear seat or on the back of the front passenger's seat at the bottom.

- ▶ Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

Storage and convenience

Storage compartments

Safety information on storage compartments in the vehicle interior

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Information on the ashtray

The ashtray is located in the cup holder in the front centre console.

Emptying the ashtray

- ▶ Pull the ashtray upwards out of the holder.
- ▶ Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- ▶ To close the ashtray, put the upper section back on and screw it shut.

- ▶ Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Information on the cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter is located in the front centre console.

- ▶ Press the button on the cigarette lighter .
- ▶ When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the vehicle is switched on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

Information on power sources

When the vehicle is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

12-volt sockets

You can connect electrical devices to the 12-volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12-volt sockets are located in the front centre console and in the luggage compartment side trim. They are marked with the  symbol or 12V.

USB connections

You can use the USB connections to charge mobile devices.

The USB connections are located in the front centre console and in the rear cabin. ▶

Depending on the vehicle model, USB connections may be indicated by one of the following symbols:  or .



WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- Improper use of 12-volt electrical sockets or USB connections can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.



CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.



Note

- Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a short period of time while the compressor is in use.
- Use a certified USB-C cable or a certified adapter to achieve the best possible charging performance.
- Applies to vehicles with USB interfaces with increased charging capacity: Use a certified USB-C cable with a charging capacity of 60 W or 100 W and an E-marker chip.

Information on cup holders

The cup holders are located in the front centre console and, on some vehicle versions, in the rear centre armrest.

- ▶ To use the cup holders in the rear centre armrest, fold the armrest down.



WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These objects can be thrown throughout the vehicle interior in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!



CAUTION

Do not place open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

Luggage compartment

Safety information on the luggage compartment

- ▶ Make sure all luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment are safely secured.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Close the luggage compartment cover before starting the journey if the vehicle load permits this.
- ▶ Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.
- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressures according to the load.



WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the vehicle occupants

in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.

- The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times
⇒ page 71.
- Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards. Otherwise objects stored

in the luggage compartment can fly forward during sudden braking – risk of injury!

- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards. Otherwise the protection provided by the seatbelt for the middle seat is not guaranteed – risk of injury!
- If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
- The retaining hooks should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!



CAUTION

- Lower the rear head restraints before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are in their guides so that they cannot be caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.
- If you need to adjust the front seats when the rear backrest is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- To prevent any damage, let the luggage compartment cover retract slowly.

Information on the luggage compartment cover

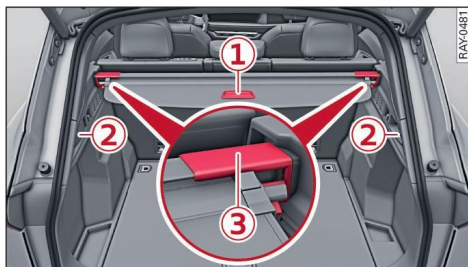


Fig. 52 Luggage compartment: Extendible luggage compartment cover



Fig. 53 Luggage compartment: Stowing the luggage compartment cover underneath the floor panel

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 85.

Extending/retracting the luggage compartment cover

- ▶ Pull out the luggage compartment cover using the grip ① and hook it into the retainers ② on the side trim.
- ▶ To retract the luggage compartment cover, unhook it from the retainers ② on the side trim and allow it to roll forwards slowly; make sure it does not retract too quickly.

Removing and installing the luggage compartment cover

Important: The luggage compartment cover is retracted.

- ▶ To remove the luggage compartment cover, press the end cap ③ on one side inwards to loosen it from the side trim mounting.
- ▶ Lift the luggage compartment cover out.
- ▶ To install the luggage compartment cover, insert the end cap ③ on one side into the side trim mounting.

- ▶ Press the end cap on the other side inwards and position the luggage compartment cover between the two mountings.
- ▶ Also insert the end cap on the other side into the side trim mounting.

Stowing the luggage compartment cover underneath the floor panel

- ▶ Fold up the floor panel ④ towards the front.
- ▶ Remove the covers ⑤ at the sides by pulling them out towards the centre of the vehicle.
- ▶ Position the luggage compartment cover in the recesses ⑥.
- ▶ Put the covers back in at the sides and fold the floor panel back down.

Lowering/raising the load sill

The load sill can be lowered to make loading/unloading the vehicle and hitching up/unhitching a trailer easier.

The / buttons for lowering the load sill are located in the side trim on the left of the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Press the button to lower the load sill.
- ▶ Press the button to raise the load sill again.
- ▶ To stop the process, press one of the buttons again.
- ▶ To lower/raise the load sill to a specific height, hold the / button until it reaches the desired height.

The LED in the button lights up while the load sill is being lowered. Once the loading height has been reached, the LED remains lit as long as the load sill is in the lowered position. The LED goes out again when the load sill is raised to its original position. The load sill will not be lowered if there is insufficient pressure in the air suspension accumulator when the vehicle is switched off. In this case the LED will flash three times.

The load sill is raised automatically if you select a different Audi drive select mode, close the boot lid or drive off.

If the air suspension accumulator is empty, it will be refilled while you are driving and when the vehicle is switched on and the load sill is lowered.

CAUTION

- Damage may occur if the vehicle is parked for an extended period with the load sill lowered. You should therefore raise the load sill again after loading/unloading the vehicle.
- Please also observe the information on ground clearance ⇨ *page 114*.

Folding the centre backrest up/down



Applies to: vehicles with release handle

Fig. 56 Centre backrest: recess in centre backrest



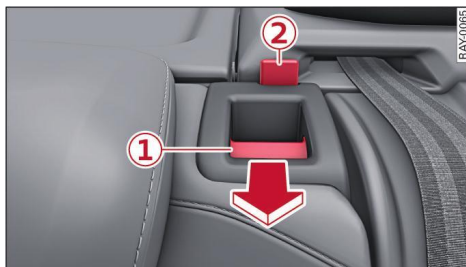
Applies to: vehicles with release button

Fig. 57 Centre backrest: release button

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 85*.

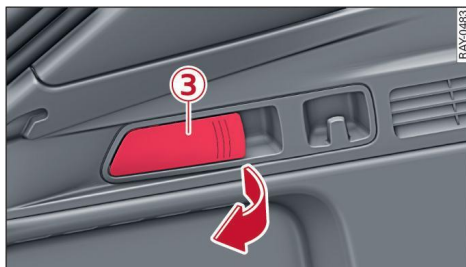
- ▶ To fold the centre backrest down, reach into the recess ① from below and press the release handle upwards, or
- ▶ Press the release button ② downwards so that the red marking becomes visible. Fold down the backrest.
- ▶ When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the centre backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking is no longer visible.

Folding the outer backrest up/down



Applies to: vehicles with release lever on outer backrest

Fig. 54 Outer backrest: release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking



Applies to: vehicles with release lever in luggage compartment

Fig. 55 Luggage compartment: release lever

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 85*.

- ▶ To fold down the backrest, pull the release lever ① or ③ in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- ▶ When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Installing/removing the load guard



Fig. 58 Luggage compartment and folded-down backrest: Load guard



Fig. 59 Load guard: Securing belt

The load guard prevents objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment. You can fit the load guard in the retainers behind the front seats ① or in the retainers behind the rear seats ②.

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 85.

Installing the load guard

- ▶ To hook the load guard into the front retainers ①, the backrests must be folded down.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with adjustable rear seats: Before hooking the load guard into the rear retainers ②, move the rear seats to their original position.
- ▶ Before hooking the load guard into the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ Secure the load guard in the top retainer on one side first, then in the bottom retainer ① or ② on the same side. Make sure that the securing belt ③ is facing towards the rear when securing.
- ▶ Tighten the securing belt ③.
- ▶ Repeat the procedure on the other side.

- ▶ Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

Removing the load guard

- ▶ Before removing the load guard from the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ To unhook the load guard from the retainers ① or ②, loosen the securing belt ③ on one side.
- ▶ Release the load guard from the bottom retainer first, then from the top retainer ① or ②.
- ▶ Repeat the procedure on the other side.
- ▶ Fold the backrests back until they engage, if necessary.
- ▶ Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

Using the fastening rings and stretch net to secure objects

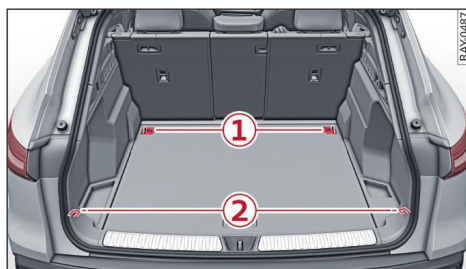


Fig. 60 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 85.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings at the front ① and rear ② of the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- ▶ Fold up the clips on the fastening rings ①.

Stretch net

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there may be a stretch net in the vehicle which you can use to secure lighter objects in position in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

Using the floor panel in the luggage compartment

Folding the floor panel up/down

- Lift the floor panel at the handle and fold it up.
- Fold the floor panel back down after use.

Roof carrier

Safety information on roof carriers

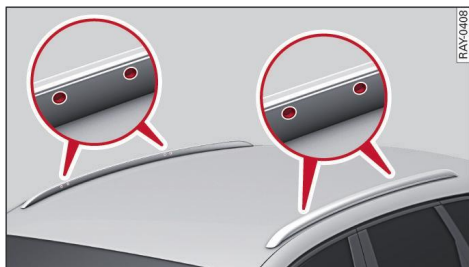


Fig. 61 Roof railing: Attachment points

The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Use only roof carriers which are suitable for your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- Only attach roof carriers at the points provided on the vehicle.
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Observe the maximum load capacity of the roof carrier you are using.

– The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.



CAUTION

Make sure that the boot lid and panoramic glass roof do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.



For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.



WARNING

– Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Introduction

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

- A single-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed settings individually in the vehicle.
- A three-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right and the temperature in the rear individually. The air output can be set for the entire vehicle using the controls for the front seats.

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the sun-roof (if fitted) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher setting once the heater has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

Information on the air conditioner

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the wind-screen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating/cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

- Depending on the country, the air conditioner may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.
- When the blower is switched on, the enhanced air filter with activated carbon reduces the concentration of fine particulate matter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

Overview of air conditioner displays

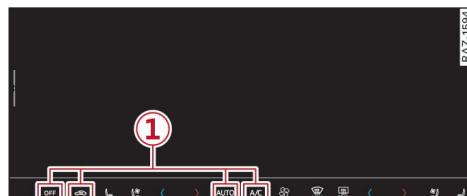


Fig. 62 Centre display: Control bar for three-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

All of the air conditioner settings are available on the centre display; for the rear seats, only certain functions are available.

Adjusting the air conditioner control bar

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone automatic air conditioner

You can replace certain air conditioner functions in the lower control bar ① with an air conditioner function from the air conditioner menu.

- Press and hold one of the buttons ① for a few seconds. Editable functions and selected functions for the control bar will be shown.
- Select the desired button from the editable functions and drag it onto the button that you want to replace.
- To confirm the selection, press **OK**.

Rear control console

The control console can be used to set the temperature and (if fitted) the seat heating in the rear cabin.

Adjusting the air conditioning

The air conditioner functions can be found in the lower control bar and the air conditioner menu on the centre display. The air conditioner menu is accessed by pressing .

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. When a function is switched on, a bar will light up in the button.

Temperature

You can press   on the centre display to set the temperature to between 16°C and 28°C. Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output. You can press - / + on the rear control console to set the temperature in the rear.

AUTO Automatic mode

Automatic mode regulates the air output and distribution automatically in order to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

Press AUTO to set the air output mode. The mode displayed is used in automatic mode.

A/C Cooling mode

If you activate this function, cooling mode will be regulated automatically.

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The cooling system is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures. The button will remain lit.

Cooling mode at maximum

If you activate this function, cooling mode will operate at maximum power and maximum air flow. This function should only be used for short periods of time to avoid unnecessary energy consumption. This function can cause the windows to steam up in unfavourable climatic conditions.

Eco Cooling mode

If you activate this function, the air conditioner will operate in efficiency mode. Due to the reduction in power used, the comfort provided by the air conditioning is reduced.

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually by pressing  . You should leave the blower on

and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press AUTO for automatic control of the air conditioner blower speed.

Air recirculation mode

Press  to switch air recirculation mode on/off manually.

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior .

Air distribution

Select which vents you wish the air to flow out of. Press AUTO for automatic control of the air distribution.

Applies to vehicles with 3-zone automatic air conditioner: The air distribution is switched to automatic control if all three air distribution functions are switched off.

Pressing  will direct the air to the windscreen.

The air distribution set manually for the driver's side will also be set for the rear.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows.

SYNC Synchronising

When the sync function is switched on, the temperature and air distribution settings on the driver's side will be applied to the rest of the vehicle.

OFF Switching off

Press OFF to off the air conditioning for the front and the rear seats. The supply of air from outside the vehicle will be cut off.

To switch the air conditioning on again, press any of the buttons on the centre display or in the rear cabin.

Defrosting

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. ►

The air output is increased to maximum and the air comes out of the vents below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. A/C cooling mode is activated. The cooling system is switched off automatically depending on the outside temperature. The windscreen heating may be switched on automatically at low outside temperatures, depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle. Depending on the ambient temperature, you may be able to switch the windscreen heating on manually by pressing .

Rear window heating

Press  to switch the rear window heating on/off manually.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after about 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

Seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted to several levels. Press  once to activate the highest level. Press  repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat heating is switched off.

The seat heating will be switched off if the seat is unoccupied. If someone gets back in the seat within 10 minutes, the seat heating will be switched on automatically.

Seat ventilation

The intensity of the seat ventilation can be adjusted to several levels. Press  once to set the highest level. Press  repeatedly to lower the intensity by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat ventilation is switched off.

The seat ventilation will be switched off if the seat is unoccupied. If someone gets back in the seat within 10 minutes, the seat ventilation will be switched on automatically.

Steering wheel heating

When this function is switched on, the steering wheel will be heated.

You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel.

Heat hands

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the heat output at the dash panel vents. You can hold your hands in front of the vents to warm them up. If fitted, the steering wheel heating will be activated. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient heat output is available.

Heat feet

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the heat output in the footwells. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient heat output is available.

Cool feet

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system directs cooler air to the footwells. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient cooling output is available.

Fresh air

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the amount of air in the vehicle and the proportion of air that is drawn from outside to improve the air quality in the vehicle interior. The manual air recirculation mode is deactivated. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

WARNING

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO₂ can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation / automatic air recirculation immediately and

ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.

- The vehicle has functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
- An alternating magnetic field is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

Adjusting the vents

Move the lever to adjust the direction of the air flow. Use the rotary knob to adjust the amount of air.

Calling up the air conditioner settings menu

► Select:  > .

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the air conditioner settings menu.

The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Using the air conditioner functions

Seat temperature balance

You can distribute the set strength of the seat heating and ventilation between the seat cushion and the backrest in the air conditioner settings menu ⇒ *page 94*.

Automatic air recirculation

If this function is switched on in the air conditioner settings menu ⇒ *page 94*, air recirculation is regulated automatically when air pollution is detected ⇒ .

Air conditioning when unlocking

If this function is switched on in the air conditioner settings menu ⇒ *page 94*, the air conditioning will run for several minutes after the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

If the air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO₂ can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.

Driver messages about the air conditioning

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear in the event of a fault. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching the air conditioning on later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Introduction

You can control the auxiliary heating/ventilation via the centre display or via the myAudi app.

When the air conditioner function is started, it automatically selects whether the auxiliary heating or auxiliary ventilation is switched on, depending on the ambient conditions.

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Conditions for operation

- There is enough fuel in the tank.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Information on the auxiliary heating/ventilation

- The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation system heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner control bar.
- If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
- At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.



WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!
- Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
- Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the ex-

haust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

Using the auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 95*.

Select:  > **Auxiliary heating**

Immediate start

You can set the operating time and switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately by selecting  **Switch on auxiliary heating**.

When a function is switched on, a white bar will light up in the button.

Departure times

To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 222*.

You can set up to five timers for the departure time.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary heating will continue to run for 10 minutes after the departure time is reached.

- ▶ Select **Departure times**.
- ▶ Select **Add new departure time**.
- ▶ Set the time and day.
- ▶ Select **Repeat** to set a repeat timer.
- ▶ Select **Store setting**.

The timer has been set.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been set. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

Heating mode for next departure

- ▶ To have the system defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows, select **Clear windows**.

- If you want the system to defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows and also warm up the vehicle, select **Warm up interior**.

Switching on/off using the button in the row of switches

- To switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately, press the  button in the row of buttons.

When the LED in the button flashes, the auxiliary heating is being pre-heated. The vehicle interior is not yet being heated. When the LED in the button is lit continuously, the auxiliary heating/ventilation is active.

If the  symbol in the button is lit, a timer is programmed.

Driver messages about the auxiliary heating/ventilation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available**

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Information on fluids in the air conditioner

Refrigerant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Type of refrigerant

Symbol	Meaning
	Type of lubricant
	Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops)
	Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled.

Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

Air conditioner evaporator

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used to repair the air conditioner evaporator.

 **WARNING**

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

- Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Introduction



Fig. 63 Centre console: Switching on the drive system

The vehicle (ignition) and the drive system can be switched on separately. Electronic systems such as the MMI are available when the vehicle is switched on but the drive system is not. The vehicle can only be driven once the drive system has been switched on. Depending on the model, the term “drive system” refers to the combustion engine or the electric drive system.

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the digital key, the activated digital key card must be in the phone compartment ⇒ page 196; the mobile device does not have to be in the phone compartment.

Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.

Switching the drive system on

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button. The drive system will be switched on.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.

The full performance is not available until the engine is warm. Certain powertrain components may need to be warmed up depending on the type of engine. During this warming up phase,  is shown.

Mild hybrid drive: The combustion engine will start. Depending on the situation, the electric

drive system may be switched on when driving off or manoeuvring.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Switching off the drive system

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button. The drive system will be switched off.

After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine in transmission position P and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Switching off the drive system in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency while the vehicle is still moving. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may only be possible to switch the engine back on again after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

Switching the vehicle on/off

If you only wish to switch the vehicle on/off and do not want to start the drive system as well, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. ▶

Situations where the vehicle is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the vehicle and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Important:

- The start/stop system must have switched off the engine.
- You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
- The vehicle must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

- Driver's door has been opened.
- Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
- Brake pedal is not pressed.

The vehicle will also be switched off after 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle from the outside.



WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 99*.



CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
- If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should

leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Driver messages about the vehicle key

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Safety system: fault. Please contact workshop

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop soon

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the drive system was active. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the vehicle or restart the drive system after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.



Vehicle key: key not detected. Is there still a valid key in the vehicle?

The vehicle key and the digital key were removed from the vehicle while the drive system was active. If the vehicle key and digital key are not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the vehicle or restart the drive system after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside while the drive system is active.



Remote control key: hold against marked area and press start/stop button. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  symbol
⇨ *page 97, Fig. 63*.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

 **Hold remote control key against marked area or place digital key in Audi phone box. See owner's manual**

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  symbol
⇒ *page 97, Fig. 63* or place the digital key in the phone compartment.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Driving the vehicle

Driving away, stopping, parking

Driving away from a standstill

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Start the vehicle.
- ▶ Select transmission position D or R. The parking brake will be released automatically.
- ▶ Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- ▶ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Please note, especially when driving off and parking, that the vehicle “creeps” forwards/back. The drive system sets the vehicle in motion when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- ▶ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Keeping the vehicle free to roll

Refer to ⇒ *page 109*.

WARNING

- Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
- Never leave your vehicle unattended while the drive system is active – risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always make sure that position P is selected when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Always switch off the vehicle and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
- Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the drive system to overheat – risk of damage!

Transmission positions and driving programs

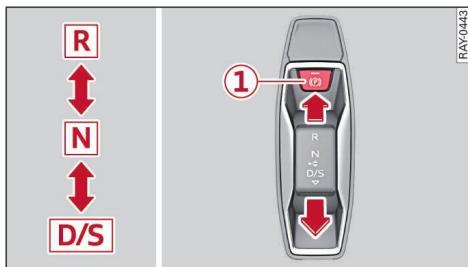


Fig. 64 Centre console: Selector lever

Transmission positions

The transmission positions are shown on the selector lever.

- **P** (Park)
- **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
- **N** (Neutral)
- **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

Driving programs

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs, for example.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- **D** (Drive): Normal driving
- **E** (Efficiency*): Economical driving
- **S** (Sport): Performance driving

Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
- To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
- You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within

one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.

- The selected transmission position will light up on the selector lever.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash
⇒ page 109.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle can only be locked with the central locking switch when N is selected.

Transmission position P (parking lock)/ parking brake

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism for the gearbox.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- Press the  button . The parking brake will be applied. Transmission position P (parking lock) will be selected.
- The parking brake status is shown on the selector lever and in the instrument cluster. The parking lock status is shown in the instrument cluster.

If you switch off the drive system when transmission position D or R is selected, transmission position P will be engaged automatically. If you switch off the drive system in transmission position N, transmission position P will be selected automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Transmission position P will be selected automatically if you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door while the vehicle is stationary in transmission position D or R.

The drive system must be active in order to change from P to D or R. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the drive system may need to be active in order to change to N.

Selecting a driving program

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select, driving program S or E will be activated respectively. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off.

It may not be possible to select S in Audi drive select mode **offroad plus**.



WARNING

- Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed on the selector lever.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 99*.
- In transmission positions D and R, the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the drive system is activated. This is because the gearbox still transmits power and the vehicle will “creep”.
- If the vehicle drives into an obstacle, e.g. a higher curb, the vehicle will no longer creep and it may roll back slightly - risk of accident. Creeping can be reactivated with the accelerator or by changing the transmission position/driving program.
- Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the drive system switched on – risk of accident!
- Never select transmission position R when driving at normal speeds – risk of accident!
- The vehicle can roll away even if it is switched off.

Manual gear selection

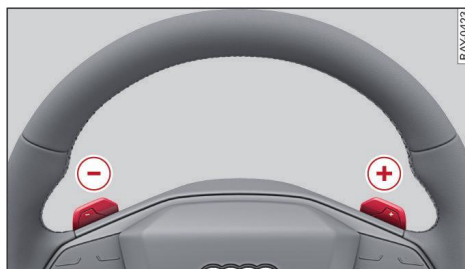


Fig. 65 Steering wheel: Paddle levers

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode. Depending on the active Audi drive select mode, it may be possible to switch to manual gear selection mode both when the vehicle is stationary and when it is moving.

Gear selection with paddle levers

- ▶ To change up: Press the paddle lever ⇒ *Fig. 65*.
- ▶ To change down: Press the paddle lever .
- ▶ To shift into the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, hold the paddle lever .
- ▶ To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the paddle lever .

Depending on the selected driving program and Audi drive select mode, the gearbox may revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period.

Information on manual gear selection

- The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.
- The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.
- In the Audi drive select mode **offroad plus**, the letter M is displayed in red in the instrument cluster. The gearbox does **not** automatically shift up into the next gear shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

Information on the accelerator pedal

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed.

Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

Applies to vehicles with boost function: The boost function provides even more power for a short time. Whether this function is available depends on factors such as the temperature of the drive components.

WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Using the launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

Availability

Whether this function is available depends on the availability of the drive components.

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

Important

- The engine must be warm.
- The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
- The start/stop system must be deactivated.
- The hold function must be deactivated.
- The ESC must be restricted.
- Driving program S must be selected and Audi drive select* must be set to **dynamic** mode.

Using the launch control

- Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- Keeping the brake pedal pressed, quickly press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot.
- The following driver message will appear:
Launch control programme: activated. When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake.

Once the launch control or acceleration process is complete, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.

WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.

- Do not use the launch control when the vehicle is in towing mode as this could result in damage to the vehicle, trailer and load.

Driver messages about the selector lever

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving in current position until drive system off



A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. If you switch the drive system off, you will not be able to engage any other transmission positions after the drive system is switched on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **Selector lever: fault. Transmission mode can only be changed using both paddle levers. Please contact workshop**

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving but the selector lever is out of operation. The transmission positions can only be selected by simultaneously pulling both paddle levers briefly while the vehicle is stationary. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch the drive system off. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop soon**

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

 **Parking lock: fault. Please contact workshop**

A parking lock malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away
⇒ page 99.

 **P button: fault. Auto P when drive system switched off. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred on the P button on the selector lever. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch the drive system off. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **P cannot be selected. Vehicle may roll away! Please contact workshop**

It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away
⇒ page 99.

Engine

Information on running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased.

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

Information on conventional and mild hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive

Vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Vehicles with mild hybrid drive are equipped with additional battery technology. These vehicles switch automatically between electric driving and hybrid driving.

Using recuperation

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the vehicle may be able to recover energy via recuperation. A large amount of the kinetic energy is thereby converted into electrical energy and stored in the battery of the hybrid drive system. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to decelerate in addition to the engine braking effect. The recuperation feature may be activated in transmission position D when you take your foot off the accelerator or press the brake pedal.

Because the recuperation feature is used to slow the vehicle down when you press the brake pedal, the brakes are only used in addition as necessary. This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function.

Switching automatic recuperation on/off

You can switch automatic recuperation on/off in the **Car** menu depending on the active Audi drive select mode → *page 25*.

When this function is switched on, the recuperation braking effect is based on predictive control, e.g. allowing for the road or traffic ahead, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

When this function is switched off, predictive control is not used when the vehicle is coasting and the vehicle is controlled based on the selected transmission position instead.

When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

WARNING

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Information on the vehicle sound

Electric motors are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audible when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is faded out at higher speeds.

WARNING

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing – risk of accident!

Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the power unit, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You

can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

- Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select.
- Activate the predictive efficiency messages.
- Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating).
- Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
- Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
- Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
- Do not use winter tyres in summer.
- Brake early and evenly in order to use the recuperation function.
- Make use of the start/stop system.
- Make use of the engine braking effect.
- Avoid short trips.

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

Information on energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with a smart energy management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.

If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

Driver messages about the drive system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The vehicle must not be driven any further. Continuing to drive can cause damage to the drive system. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 99*. Seek professional assistance.

Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The vehicle's performance may be limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: fault. Limited performance. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: fault. Limited performance. No reverse gear. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: warning! Performance temporarily restricted. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual

The performance is temporarily restricted due to the ambient temperature or the temperature of the drive components. Adjust your driving style accordingly.

Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Start/stop system

Introduction

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO₂ emissions. In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights.

If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Switching the start/stop system off and on

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The button lights up when the function is switched off.

► Press  to switch the function on/off.

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Basic conditions

- The driver's door and bonnet must be closed.
- Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
- The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
- The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.

Information on the start/stop system

- In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still **coasting**.
- If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to ►

manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system before driving through water.

Switching off/starting the engine

- ▶ Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp  will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- ▶ The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold function is switched on, the engine will only restart when you press the accelerator pedal.

Information on switching off/starting the engine

- Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- If you press the **START ENGINE STOP** button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
- If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase and then get back in, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
- You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

Information on automatic starting/stopping of the engine

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switch-

ed off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:

- Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
- Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
- Engine temperature
- Driver assist systems
- Driving style

Driver messages about the start/stop system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: please start vehicle manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The **START ENGINE STOP** button must be used to start the engine.

Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop soon

A malfunction has occurred in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Brakes

Introduction

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down. The braking effect of the brake pedal may be affected by the automatic recuperation if this is switched on.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

The brake system performs system tests at regular intervals while the vehicle is stationary and shortly after the vehicle starts moving. Noises ►

may occur temporarily and haptic feedback may be felt on the brake pedal.

Braking effect

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

- Wet conditions
- Low temperatures, ice and snow
- Salted roads
- Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ .

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- you apply the accelerator, or

- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
- the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.



WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
- Never let the vehicle coast with the power unit switched off (this can cause accidents).
- If you wish to equip the vehicle with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇒ *page 110*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

Driver messages about the brake system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If  and  also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails. ►

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety information ⇒ .

 **Brakes: function restricted. You can drive on carefully. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. There is a risk that the braking effect may be delayed. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop**

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

 **Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the brake servo. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Brake servo will be deactivated shortly. See owner's manual

The brake servo remains active for a short time after the vehicle is switched off. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 99*.

Brake cleaning function active

The recuperation function is blocked in certain weather conditions or if parts of the brake system have recently been replaced to ensure that the full braking effect is provided.

 **Brakes: hot. Please adapt driving style**

The brakes have been used intensively. You can continue driving. Adapt your driving style to reduce the load on the brakes.

 **Brakes: risk of overheating. Please select D and use recuperation**

The brakes have been used intensively while driving downhill for an extended period. Follow the instructions in the driver message to use the recuperation function and take the load off the brakes.



WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating the parking brake

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever ⇒ *page 100, Fig. 64*.

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern. Noises may also occur when the vehicle is stationary due to automatic test cycles.

Applying the parking brake via the button

Press the  button. The parking brake will be applied. Transmission position P (parking lock) will be selected.

When  appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.

If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied. Take additional measures to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away when parked ⇒ *page 99*.

Applying/releasing the parking brake via the MMI

You can apply and release the parking brake manually, independently of transmission position P (parking lock).

► Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Electromechanical parking brake**.

To avoid noises when driving off, do not release the parking brake manually when the vehicle is parked on a hill or is heavily loaded. ►

Putting the vehicle in neutral (to allow it to roll)

To prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically (e.g. in a tunnel car wash), proceed as follows:

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and must be switched on. Press the brake pedal and select transmission position N.

- ▶ Confirm the message on the MMI, or
- ▶ Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Ability to roll** > **Make vehicle able to roll after exit**.
- ▶ When you leave the vehicle, it will still be able to roll.
- ▶ To prevent the vehicle from rolling away again, press the  button.
- ▶ To activate/deactivate the message display when neutral (N) is selected, select:  > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Ability to roll** > **Show pop-up in position N**.



WARNING

- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always make sure that position P is selected when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away
⇒ page 99. Seek professional assistance.



CAUTION

The parking brake must not be allowed to be applied automatically in a tunnel car wash. Make sure that the vehicle is free to roll. Do not switch the vehicle off – risk of damage!

Using the hold function

This function can help you to move off easily, for example at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-start traffic.

The hold function is generally activated automatically on gradients when the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp **HOLD** will light up.

Important: The driver's door must be closed and/or the driver's seat belt must be buckled. The drive system must be switched on and transmission position D or R or driving program S must be selected.

Depending on the situation, you may need to activate the hold function yourself.

- ▶ With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Now increase the pressure on the brake pedal.
- ▶ When **HOLD** appears, the vehicle is being held automatically. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, such as when parking on a hill, the hold function is deactivated automatically to enable manoeuvring. If you want to activate the hold function again, press the brake pedal again more firmly.

When the hold function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.



WARNING

- The hold function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold function.
- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!



CAUTION

If you come to a standstill without pressing the brake pedal on a steep road, the vehicle may roll back slightly before the hold function holds the vehicle. In this case, you should press the brake pedal.

Using the emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake ▶

system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- ▶ Press and hold the  button while the vehicle is moving.
- ▶ A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- ▶ If you release the button or press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.



WARNING

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

Driver messages about the electromechanical parking brake

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual**

 **Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake**

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the vehicle off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 99*. Seek professional assistance.

 **Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop**

HOLD **Hold system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake or hold function. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park

the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle so it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 99*.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

Hold system: caution! Incline is too steep

If one of these two driver messages appears, the braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

Parking brake is applied

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.



Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Special driving situations

Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
- When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
- When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S ⇒ *page 101*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- Use the hold function if appropriate ⇒ *page 109*.

Tilt angle display

You can display the transverse and longitudinal tilt angle relative to the horizon. Certain contents can also be projected onto the head-up display.

– Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Tilt angle display**.

The steering angle and (depending on the country) altitude, compass direction and coordinates of the vehicle's current position are displayed in addition to the current tilt angle. You are also provided with information on the maximum transverse and longitudinal tilt angles achieved during the current trip. The values are reset when you switch the vehicle off.

Please note that the accuracy of the display depends on the driving situation.



WARNING

- Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
- Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.
- Applies to vehicles with tilt angle display: Do not rely exclusively on the tilt angle display when assessing the driving situation.
- Applies to vehicles with tilt angle display and head-up display: Do not use the tilt angle display in the head-up display on public roads – risk of accident!

Information on driving off-road

Your car is not an off-road vehicle. Please therefore note the following if you drive the vehicle on unsurfaced tracks or off-road:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Take the ground clearance of your vehicle into account and do not drive the bottom of your vehicle directly over raised obstacles. Instead, drive the wheels on one side of the car up and

across the top of the obstacle to prevent damage to the underbody.

- When driving over sand or soft mud, maintain a moderate speed. The vehicle will be less likely to get stuck if you avoid stopping.
- Wash your vehicle after driving it off-road. Dirt and stones falling from the car can be a hazard to other road users.

Use the following functions as required:

- Audi drive select offroad or offroad plus mode
- Tilt angle display
- Raising the vehicle using the lift function
- Restricting the ESC



WARNING

When driving off-road you are advised to avoid tracks or terrain which are not suited to the design of the car and your own driving skills and experience.



For the sake of the environment

Take care not to damage the environment and respect natural surroundings. Keep to the marked tracks and routes.

Information on driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

- Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
- Deactivate the start/stop system.
- Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by on-coming traffic.
- Do not stop the car in water.
- Do not drive in reverse.
- Do not switch off the drive system.



WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.



CAUTION

- Parts of the vehicle (e.g. drive system, gear-box, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.
- Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water – risk of damage!

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select

Introduction

Audi drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the set-up of individual systems to suit your personal driving style.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

The drive select button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▶ Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster or on the MMI, or
- ▶ Press the drive select button and press the desired mode on the MMI.
- ▶ To activate a plus mode, first select the appropriate basic mode if it is not already selected and then select the plus mode on the MMI.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, briefly take your foot off the accelerator after changing the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

balanced – provides a good balance between ride comfort and dynamic performance for everyday use. Press  to configure the **individual** mode to your preferred vehicle set-up ⇨ *page 113, Information on individual settings*. This personalised mode will then replace **balanced** mode in the **Audi drive select** menu. Audi recommends **balanced** mode for everyday use.

individual – allows you to adjust selected vehicle systems as desired. This personalised mode will then replace balanced mode in the **Audi drive select** menu. If you reset all the vehicle systems in the **individual** menu to balanced, the standard balanced mode will be restored.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up. Driving program S is selected. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

efficiency – adjusts the vehicle settings to an economical driving style. Driving program E is selected. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

offroad – provides a balanced vehicle set-up in combination with increased ground clearance and is ideal for everyday use on roads that are in poor condition, for example.

offroad plus – provides a vehicle set-up that is particularly suited to driving on unsurfaced tracks. Driving program S is not available in this mode. The offroad mode for the ESC will be selected. On vehicles with air suspension, the ground clearance is increased. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

Information on individual settings

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be set from comfortable to dynamic.

Air suspension with damping control

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

The air suspension adjusts the vehicle's ground clearance according to the setting.

Driver assist

During assisted driving, depending on vehicle equipment, the driving behaviour of the adaptive cruise control and the predictive cruise control can be changed between comfortable and dynamic.

Audi virtual cockpit layout

The layout of the instrument cluster can be changed.

Suspension

Operating the air suspension

The air suspension is an electronically controlled shock absorber and vehicle level regulating system. The characteristics of the suspension are automatically adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation via the damping control. The system compensates for differences in vehicle load. In addition, the level of the vehicle is adjusted in steps depending on the vehicle's speed in order to reduce air resistance at high speeds and to increase ground clearance at low speeds. You can adjust the vehicle level manually if required, such as in order to drive onto steep driveways or ramps. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Displaying the vehicle level

- Press the drive select button, or
- Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Tilt angle display**.

The current suspension level is shown via two bars next to the level scale. The higher up the bars are, the higher the ground clearance. While the suspension is being raised or lowered, the target level is displayed in colour. Depending on the selected Audi drive select mode, only specified suspension levels within a particular range can be set. This range is shown as a lighter area in the level scale.

Raising/lowering the vehicle via the lift function

- Press the drive select button, or
- Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Tilt angle display**.
- Press  to set the highest vehicle level and thereby the maximum ground clearance. When the vehicle is raised or is at the highest suspension level,  is highlighted.
- Press  to lower the vehicle again.  will no longer be highlighted.

The Audi drive select mode may be changed when the vehicle is raised.

The vehicle is lowered at speeds of approx. 35 km/h and above. This function may only be used for short periods of time when increased ground clearance is required and is not suitable for permanent use while driving.



CAUTION

- Please also observe the information on ground clearance ⇒ *page 114*.
- When transporting the vehicle by lorry, train, boat, plane, etc., it must only be strapped down on the tyres. It is not permissible to secure the vehicle by its axles, struts or towline anchorages, since the pressure in the air suspension can change during transport. Under certain circumstances there is a risk that the vehicle may not be properly secured.

Information on ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

- Changes in temperature
- Changes in vehicle loading
- Changing the Audi drive select mode
- Raising/lowering the vehicle via the air suspension
- Extended stationary periods



WARNING

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the vehicle level is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.



CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages about the suspension

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Air suspension: fault. You can continue driving slowly at max. XXX**

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the driver message.

 **Air suspension: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Steering and ground clearance restricted**

A malfunction has occurred. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 99*. Avoid making steering movements, as the ground clearance of the vehicle may be so low that a steering input could damage the wheels and wheel housing.

 **Suspension: fault. You can continue driving**

A malfunction has occurred. Driving characteristics may be restricted. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

 **Air suspension: fault. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be restricted and the ground clearance may be low. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Steering

Introduction

The electromechanical steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Driver messages about the steering

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

You can drive on if the warning lamp only lights up briefly.

 **Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The vehicle can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 99*. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

 **Steering: fault. You can continue driving**

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the drive system, and in this case you must not continue driving.

You can drive on if the indicator lamp only lights up briefly.

 **Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Introduction

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It ►

interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇒ *page 117*.

This combination gives the car exceptional handling capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points

⇒ .

quattro ultra

Applies to: vehicles with quattro ultra

If four-wheel drive is not required for the current road conditions, the rear part of the drive train is uncoupled in order to save fuel. The system continuously analyses whether four-wheel drive is required. This allows the rear part of the drive train to be recoupled shortly before it is needed.



WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. Therefore, do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. Therefore, do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Information on the sport differential

The sport differential varies the distribution of power between the driven wheels on the rear axle according to the prevailing conditions. A high level of agility and acceleration is therefore achieved during cornering, while the vehicle responds well to steering input. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Driver messages about the four-wheel drive

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Dynamic driving system: fault. Function restricted. Please contact workshop**

The function is restricted. You can continue driving carefully. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

 **Dynamic driving system: overheating. Please adapt driving style**

The temperature of the drive system has risen significantly. You should avoid performance driving until the temperature drops to the normal level and the indicator lamp goes out.

 **Four-wheel drive: please check tyres. See owner's manual**

A difference in the rolling circumferences of the front and rear tyres has been detected. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern. Check the tyres and correct the tyre pressures if necessary. If the indicator lamp does not disappear, contact a qualified workshop.

Electronic stabilisation control

Introduction

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer, wheel-spin on the driven wheels or any danger of the vehicle tipping over.

The system stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

The systems can make noises when they intervene.

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

There may be noises while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available. This increases driving stability.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.



WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to

suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!

- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.
- Increasing the load the vehicle is carrying – particularly its roof load – raises the vehicle's centre of gravity and therefore also increases the risk of the vehicle tipping over. Adapt your driving style to suit the conditions and avoid performing any dynamic manoeuvres – risk of accident!

Using the electronic stabilisation control

The  button ( on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the vehicle is switched on.

Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin – for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

- To restrict the ESC, press the  button briefly. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

One of the following ESC modes will be selected, depending on which Audi drive select mode is chosen:

- **sport** – This mode is designed for driving on even surfaces. It is used in all Audi drive select modes with the exception of **offroad plus**.
- **offroad** – This mode is suitable for driving on unsurfaced tracks and is designed for use on uneven terrain or loose surfaces. If you set Audi drive select to **offroad plus** mode, the offroad mode for the ESC will be selected automatically.

Switching off the ESC

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

- To switch off the ESC, press and hold the  button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps  and **ESC OFF** will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

Information on the electronic stabilisation control

If you set Audi drive select to **offroad plus** mode, the ESC will be restricted.

Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.

If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

and is being used for performance driving, it may not be possible to prevent it from tipping over – risk of accident!

- Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

Driver messages about the electronic stabilisation control

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault!**
See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Further indicator lamps

If  flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

WARNING

- If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads. If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

Introduction

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not block the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Observe the relevant local regulations when towing.



WARNING

- Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
- Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Points to check before towing

Trailer weight

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weight.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can correspondingly climb steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The actual trailer weight is the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or in the technical data in the Owner's Manual.

Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible: ►

- Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
- Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
- Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
- Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. Adjust your speed in the event of unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. Reduce your speed if the trailer starts to sway even slightly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect
⇒ .

Exterior lighting

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp  flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear. Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on the vehicle, and adjust for the “full load” conditions specified on the tyre pressure sticker. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, fit both the vehicle and the trailer with winter tyres.

Driver assist systems

The alignment of the sensors/cameras may be altered when a trailer/rear carrier system is hitched up or unhitched.

To ensure that the driver assist systems are fully functional, you should switch the vehicle off and on after you hitch up or unhitch a trailer/rear carrier system.

Overrun brake

If your trailer is equipped with an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.



Parking on an incline while towing

Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Running the vehicle in

Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

Inspection intervals

Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.



WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.



CAUTION

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

Switching air suspension towing mode on

Important: All doors on the vehicle must be closed. The **balanced** mode must be selected in Audi drive select before you hitch up the trailer ⇒ .

- Select: > **Car** > **More** > **Air suspension: trailer**.
- You should deactivate towing mode again when the trailer is unhitched.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the air suspension is automatically set to trailer mode when you plug the trailer connector into the vehicle's trailer socket.

If you use rear carrier systems which are mounted directly on the ball joint of the towing bracket, you can also switch trailer mode off manually.

If you have to drive on a rough surface, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching up the trailer and ensuring the draw bar weight is correct. Select **offroad** or **offroad plus** mode in Audi drive select or press to set the maximum ground clearance.

Driver messages about towing mode

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Air suspension: currently restricted. Towing mode. See owner's manual

Air suspension towing mode is switched on in your vehicle. The air suspension can only be adjusted to a limited extent. You should deactivate air suspension towing mode again when the trailer is unhitched. The air suspension can be adjusted again.

The driver message can be hidden by pressing the button on the multi-function steering wheel. It will appear again the next time the vehicle is switched on.

Information on lowering the vehicle manually

When lowering the vehicle manually you also should not lower it past the level set in **balanced** mode in Audi drive select.



CAUTION

- If you have hitched up a trailer, never switch towing mode off while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the restrictions on the ride height regulating system would then no longer be present.
- The vehicle's handling may change if you are driving with a trailer on loose surfaces with the vehicle raised. Adjust your speed accordingly.
- If you have raised the vehicle manually, note that the vehicle lowers itself automatically above a certain speed.
- Make sure you adhere to the draw bar weight required for your vehicle. Before hitching up the trailer, select **balanced** mode in Audi drive select. This will ensure

that the draw bar weight and the height of the vehicle are coordinated.

Swivelling towing bracket

Extending / retracting towing bracket



Fig. 66 Luggage compartment: Button for releasing towing bracket



Fig. 67 Rear bumper: Connecting socket and eye for breakaway cable

The towing bracket is located on the rear bumper. It is released electrically and extended/retracted manually.

If you have not used the towing bracket for a relatively long time or have used it constantly without retracting or extending it, the swivelling movement may be stiff or the towing bracket may no longer swivel downwards automatically when the handle is operated. In this case Audi recommends that you extend and retract the towing bracket several times or loosen it by jogging it up and down repeatedly.

The button ① is not active when the vehicle is in motion or if the boot lid is closed.

The eye ③ must only be used for securing the breakaway cable of the trailer.

Extending towing bracket

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Press button ① ⇒ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▶ Swivel the towing bracket out manually until it engages audibly in the operating position. The LED in the button ① will light up permanently.
- ▶ Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket. Please read the information on the air suspension towing mode ⇒ page 121 and on lowering the load sill.
- ▶ Plug the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system into the trailer socket ②. Use an adapter if necessary.
- ▶ When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the breakaway cable into the eye ③ on the towing bracket.

When you switch the vehicle on, make sure that the instrument cluster does not display the indicator lamp 🚗 or the message **Please check towing bracket**. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again, if necessary.

Retracting towing bracket

- ▶ Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the eye ③.
- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector between the vehicle and the trailer/rear carrier system ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Remove any adapters from the trailer socket ⇒ !.
- ▶ Unhitch the trailer or the rear carrier system.
- ▶ Press button ① ⇒ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▶ Swivel the towing bracket in manually until it engages audibly in the rest position. The LED in the button ① will light up permanently.

When you switch the vehicle on, make sure that the instrument cluster does not display the indicator lamp 🚗 or the message **Please check towing bracket**. Swivel the towing bracket out and in again, if necessary.

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number ▶

plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.



WARNING

- Make sure that no people, animals or objects of any kind are in the path of the towing bracket – risk of injury!
- The towing bracket must NOT be used if it does not engage properly or if the LED flashes as this means that it is not in its end position – risk of accident and injury. Only use the towing bracket when it has swivelled out fully and engaged securely. The LED lights up to indicate this.
- Never press the button ① if a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket – risk of accident!
- If any faults occur in the electrical system or in the towing bracket, safe use of the towing bracket is no longer guaranteed. Have the towing bracket inspected by a qualified workshop – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Do NOT hold a high-pressure cleaner directly at the seal of the towing bracket or the trailer socket. This may cause damage to the seal, with the result that moisture can enter and damage the system.
- Never press the button ① when a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket. The swivelling unit, accessories and parts of the vehicle could be damaged.
- If you have plugged an adapter into the trailer socket, this could damage the bumper and trailer socket when the towing bracket is retracted. Remove the adapter before retracting the towing bracket.

Information on the swivelling towing bracket

Towing bracket

Check that the ball coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean the ball coupling before using a trailer without a stabiliser and apply multi-purpose grease to it. Repeat this application regularly if you tow a trailer frequently.

Power supply

When you switch the vehicle off, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Information on trailer stabilisation¹⁾

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇒ *page 116* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇒ *page 119* and ⇒ *page 123* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

WARNING

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when towing a trailer which is light in weight – risk of accident!
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene – risk of accident! In this case, apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still “jack-knife” on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system – risk of accident! You should always drive at a speed which is suitable for the road conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways – risk of accident! Adjust your speed as appropriate.
- Towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle may result in the trailer swaying even at low speeds – risk of accident! Should you need to drive with this combination, drive particularly slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.
- If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
- If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

Information on rear carrier systems



Fig. 68 Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. The maximum draw bar weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data in the Owner's Manual. You can then find the carrying load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows:

Maximum draw bar weight (kg)	Maximum carrying load (kg)	Number of bicycles
50 – 74	50	2
75 upwards	75	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

Maximum carrying load (kg)	Maximum overhang (mm)
50 – 74	500
75	700

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm **①**. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm **②**.



WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Driver messages about the swivelling towing bracket

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Please check towing bracket

A malfunction has occurred. If the message appears while the vehicle is moving, stop at the next opportunity. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again. If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Installation dimensions and retrofitting

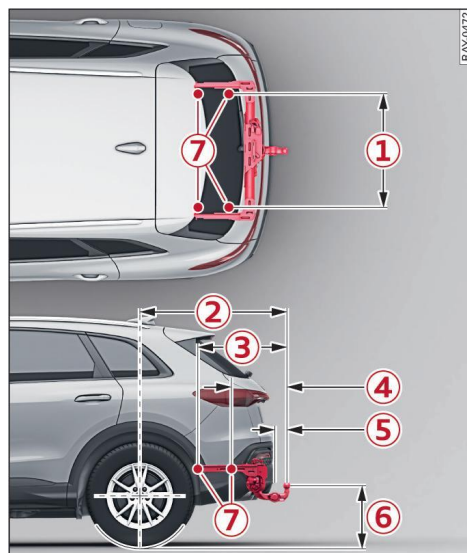


Fig. 69 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points **⑦**.

Installation dimensions (mm)

① 900	④ 378
② 1037 – 1043	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 618	⑥ 350 – 420

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket **②** are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket **⑥** applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will have all the details on retrofitting a towing bracket.

WARNING

- Avoid improper installation of the towing bracket – risk of accident! If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

Towing bracket with square tube

Introduction

Use only a towing bracket with removable ball coupling bracket and ball coupling. The towing bracket must be officially approved for use with the vehicle and trailer and for the maximum gross weight of the trailer being towed. It must be securely attached to the chassis of the vehicle.

Never attach a towing bracket to the bumper. When fitted, the towing bracket must not impair the effect of the bumper in any way. Never make modifications to the brake system.

Check regularly that the towing bracket is secure. Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

The loops on the towing bracket are intended only for securing the safety chains of the trailer.

A ball coupling/ball coupling bracket is not supplied with the towing bracket. These are available from specialist retailers.

WARNING

- Never install a weight distribution or load-balancing towing bracket/hitch on the vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket could fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle – risk of accident!

Using the towing bracket

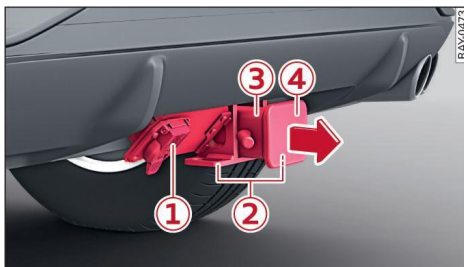


Fig. 70 Rear bumper: Towing bracket

The towing bracket on your vehicle comprises the tube (3), the trailer socket¹⁾ (1) or trailer socket holder, two loops (2) for the safety chains and the tube cover (4).

The tube (3) is suitable for attaching a removable ball coupling bracket with ball coupling, e.g. for towing a trailer ⇒ .

- ▶ To use the towing bracket, pull the cover (4) off the tube (3) in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ Check that the tube (3) is free of dirt and clean if necessary.
- ▶ Connect the trailer to the socket¹⁾ (1) and use the loops (2) to attach the safety chains.
- ▶ To protect the tube (3) from dirt after use, seal it with the cover (4).

WARNING

- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the ball coupling bracket.
- A ball coupling bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk. The

¹⁾ Depending on country

ball coupling bracket must be properly secured in the tube ③. This same applies to any other attachments secured in the tube.

- Use only ball coupling brackets/ball couplings which are approved for use with your vehicle and trailer.
- To prevent the risk of injury, always remove the ball coupling bracket when a trailer is not attached.
- It is essential to remove any dirt from the towing bracket, as it may otherwise be impossible to attach the ball coupling bracket securely in the tube – risk of accident!

Information on driving with a trailer

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Safety chains

Ensure that the safety chains are correctly attached before towing a trailer. There should be sufficient slack in the chains to allow the trailer to be towed around corners, but the chains must not touch the road.



WARNING

If the trailer is equipped with electric brakes, these brakes cannot be controlled by the vehicle's onboard monitoring system – risk of accident!

Information on retrofitting a towing bracket

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will be experienced in retrofitting towing brackets and will be familiar with the corresponding technical requirements.



WARNING

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.



CAUTION

If the vehicle's trailer socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Trailer assist

Introduction

The trailer assist helps you with driving and manoeuvring when a trailer is hitched to the vehicle. The reversing camera detects the trailer angle. The system automatically learns the properties of the trailer while driving.

The trailer assist automatically steers the trailer in the desired direction when reversing and, where necessary, when making steering corrections while driving forward. You operate the accelerator and brake pedal. When reversing, the trailer assist limits the speed to between approx. 3 km/h and 8 km/h, depending on the situation. The speed cannot be increased even by pressing the accelerator further.

Audi recommends that you practise manoeuvring with the trailer assist in a quiet location (car park or low traffic area) in order to become familiar with the system and its functions.

Before every trip

- Please make sure that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle, as the trailer assist will otherwise not be active.
- Whenever necessary, clean the reversing camera either manually, or by operating the rear window washer → *page 62*, or by selecting the cleaning function on the MMI → *page 184*.

Please observe the notes on cleaning and care
⇒ *page 261*.

System limits

The functions of the trailer assist are limited or unavailable under the following circumstances:

- The trailer assist will be deactivated if you drive forwards faster than 10 km/h.
- The trailer assist may be unavailable for a short period after the vehicle is switched on.
- The trailer assist is not available if the trailer brake lights are defective.
- For technical reasons, trailers with LED rear lights may not always be detected by the trailer assist.
- The trailer assist may not be available on steep gradients.
- A rear carrier system is fitted to the ball head of the towing bracket.
- The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
- The trailer assist cannot be used for trailers with steering axles.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The technology in the trailer assist cannot defy the laws of physics and works only within the limits imposed by the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the trailer assist function tempt you into taking any safety risks – this can cause accidents. The trailer assist cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
- Unintended vehicle manoeuvres can cause serious injuries.
- Always adjust your driving style to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The trailer assist does not take the vehicle surroundings into account and does not detect obstacles – risk of accident! It is the driver's responsibility to judge whether the trailer can be manoeuvred safely.

- Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear – risk of accident! Always watch the area surrounding the vehicle.
- Do not allow the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.
- The steering wheel turns by itself when you use the trailer assist. Do not reach into the path of the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- The trailer assist only controls the steering movements. As the driver you are always responsible for braking and for operating the accelerator and watching the traffic.

CAUTION

- The trailer assist cannot plan the movements necessary to manoeuvre the trailer. It merely steers the trailer in the desired direction.
- Always watch the trailer as it is moving and be ready to stop the manoeuvre if necessary to avoid damage. Even if the trailer assist is used correctly, in rare cases the trailer may still steer at an angle which deviates from the specified setting.
- Hitch up the trailer as straight as possible. If the angle between the trailer and vehicle is too large, there is a risk that the vehicle will collide with the trailer.
- The distance from the ball coupling to the trailer axle must be between approximately 1 metre (min.) and 5 metres (max.). For multi-axle trailers, this distance is measured from the centre of the axles.

Operating the trailer assist

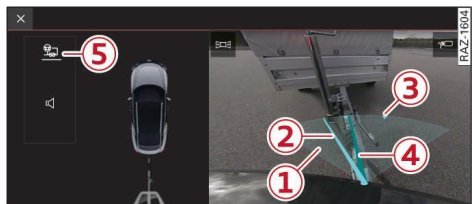


Fig. 71 Centre display: Trailer assist display

Trailer assist display

It is only possible to switch the trailer assist on/off when the vehicle is stationary or driving forwards at no more than 10 km/h.

When you switch on the system, the display shows the picture from the reversing camera with a sector ① and a dark indicator ④. The dark indicator shows the current orientation of the trailer; the sector indicates the possible adjustment range of the articulation angle. When reverse gear is engaged, the current articulation angle setting is indicated by a light indicator ②. The white markings ③ indicate the area in which the vehicle and trailer would be travelling in a straight line.

Driving and manoeuvring with the trailer assist

- ▶ Press the  button ⑤.
- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Engage reverse gear. A short animation explaining how to use the trailer assist will start on the display.
- ▶ Drag your finger to the right or left across the display to adjust the trailer's direction of travel within the possible setting range.
- ▶ Tap twice on the display to reduce the articulation angle to zero and drive straight ahead with the trailer. If the articulation angle is wide, the system first suggests making a corrective movement forwards. In this case, the vehicle will also steer when driving forwards. If the dark indicator is within the white markings, the trailer's direction of travel can be maintained. If the indicator is outside the markings, the trailer will not drive straight ahead again until a certain distance has been travelled. In this case, it may be necessary to correct the orientation.
- ▶ Watch the road. Do not move off until the traffic situation allows you do so safely ⇒  in *Introduction on page 128*, ⇒  in *Introduction on page 128*.
- ▶ You can use the display to change the desired trailer orientation at any time while the vehicle is moving.
- ▶ Please monitor the trailer orientation on the display throughout the entire manoeuvring procedure.

- ▶ Make sure that the dark indicator is correctly aligned with the trailer orientation. It may not be possible to detect the correct steering angle in poor visibility or on heavily structured surfaces.
- ▶ Press  to switch off the trailer assist.

Long trailers with a large distance between the trailer axle and the vehicle reach larger articulation angles than short trailers while in motion. They therefore react with a greater delay.

When reversing with a trailer, the articulation angle gradually changes as more distance is covered. If you want to drive in a straight line again, it is advisable to first make a forward movement in order to straighten up the trailer.

Initialising the trailer

If the trailer was hitched up with a large articulation angle or if automatic initialisation has not yet been performed, it will be necessary for the system to initialise the trailer. When the vehicle is reversing, this process is indicated by a smaller sector as soon as the trailer starts moving. In addition, the centre display shows the message **Drive carefully and operate brakes yourself to initialise trailer.**

It is also necessary to initialise the trailer if the dark indicator does not point towards the trailer correctly during use.

To initialise the trailer, the vehicle must be slowly driven forwards in a straight line and through several corners to reduce the articulation angle. During the initialisation procedure, the system is available with limited functionality.

The initialisation process can take longer, depending on outside conditions such as poor light conditions, etc.

Selecting the view

- ▶ Press the corresponding button to switch between the standard and panoramic views. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the other views are not available while the trailer assist is active.

Automatic safety brake

The trailer assist can initiate an automatic safety brake application in certain situations. In this case, the parking brake will be applied. The parking brake will be released automatically when you drive forwards. To continue reversing, you must first release the parking brake manually and deactivate the system using the  button.

The driver cannot override the safety brake application.

If you try to continue reversing by releasing the parking brake manually after the first safety brake application, the brakes will be applied again.

The trailer assist can initiate a safety brake application in the following situations:

- If the driver intervenes in the steering.
- If the steering angle is too large.
- If a malfunction is detected.
- If a rear carrier is attached.

Driver messages about the trailer assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the trailer assist functions are unavailable or restricted. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Check that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle and that the reversing camera is clean
⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

General information on assist systems

Overview of assist systems

Warning systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

-  The **manual speed warning** issues a warning when a set speed is exceeded ⇒ *page 137*.
-  The **traffic sign-based speed warning** issues a warning when a speed limit that has been detected is exceeded ⇒ *page 170*.
-  The **trailer-specific speed warning** displays trailer-specific speed limits and takes them into account ⇒ *page 171*.
-  The **distance warning** issues a warning if the distance to the vehicle in front is insufficient ⇒ *page 137*.
-  The **side assist** function uses a warning signal on the exterior mirror to warn you of road users approaching from behind and vehicles in the blind spot when you are changing lane ⇒ *page 138*.
-  The **exit warning system** can recognise traffic approaching from behind and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇒ *page 140*.
-  The **fatigue warning** indicates whether stopping to rest is recommended ⇒ *page 141*.
-  The **distraction warning** warns you when the system detects that you are distracted from the road ⇒ *page 141*.

Lane assist systems

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems.

Unlike the lane guidance function, which continuously keeps the vehicle in the centre of its lane with brief steering inputs when you are driving, the lane departure warning only provides a warning and intervenes just before you inadvertently drift out of the lane.

-  The **lane departure warning** can warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane and may indicate this by issuing corrective steering input and vibrating the steering wheel ⇒ *page 144*.
-  The **lane guidance** function helps you keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane by assisting with the steering ⇒ *page 146*.

Speed assist systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

-  The **cruise control system** helps keep the vehicle at a constant speed that you have set ⇒ *page 149*.
- **LIM** The **speed limiter** helps you avoid exceeding a specific speed that you have set ⇒ *page 149*.
-  The **predictive speed limiter** automatically adapts the vehicle's speed to recognised speed limits ⇒ *page 149*.
-  The **adaptive cruise control** function assists you by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front. The system can accelerate and brake when it detects a vehicle in front. The system can also brake the vehicle to a standstill in congested traffic and traffic jams and may drive off again automatically depending on how long the vehicle remains stationary ⇒ *page 152*.
-  The **adaptive cruise assist** combines the predictive cruise control and the lane guidance function with the functions of the adaptive cruise control ⇒ *page 161*.
-  The **predictive cruise control** function can adjust the set speed according to the environment in which you are driving (e.g. according to speed limits or the road ahead) ⇒ *page 158*.

Systems for braking and taking evasive action

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle: ▶

-  The **active front assist** function can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations ⇒ *page 163*.
-  The **rear turn assist** warns you of traffic approaching from the rear when you are turning off ⇒ *page 166*.
-  The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇒ *page 185*.
-  The **emergency assist** identifies if the driver is inactive. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane ⇒ *page 162*.

Further assist systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

-  The **predictive efficiency messages (efficiency assist)** help you to adapt your driving to the route ahead to reduce the vehicle's consumption ⇒ *page 169*.
-  The **traffic light information** displays speed recommendations for reaching a series of green lights or the waiting time at the next traffic light ⇒ *page 175*.
-  The **camera-based traffic sign recognition** system shows traffic signs which have been detected ⇒ *page 170*.

Parking systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

- When you are parking, the **parking aid with distance display** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected ⇒ *page 178*.
- The **reversing camera** displays a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ *page 180*.
- The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various

views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ *page 180*.

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Assisted parking systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

- The **parking space search** helps you find suitable parking spaces for the assisted parking functions ⇒ *page 187*.
-  The **park assist plus** helps you manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of empty parking spaces. The system controls steering movements, gear changes, acceleration and braking ⇒ *page 189*.
-  The **trailer assist** helps you when driving and manoeuvring by steering the trailer in the desired direction when reversing and, where necessary, when making steering corrections while driving forward ⇒ *page 127*.

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Safety precautions and system limits of assist systems

Safety information on the assist systems

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ .



WARNING

- As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.

- Only use the assist systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The assist systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras
⇒ *page 134*.

Further information on assist systems

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
- Always check the current settings of the assist systems before setting off. The settings might have been changed by switching the vehicle off or altered by someone else.

System limits of the assist systems

Please note the system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ .



WARNING

- The assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
- It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.

- The corrective steering/braking input from the assist systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Further information on the system limits of the assist systems

- The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assist systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
- Poor road conditions caused by inclement weather and non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unpaved or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
- The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at roundabouts, at toll gates, in city traffic or when changing from driving on the right to driving on the left.
- The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
- In towing mode, some assist systems may be restricted or unavailable, or may not react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇒ *page 119*.
- The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assist systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
- Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assist systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Areas covered by sensors and cameras

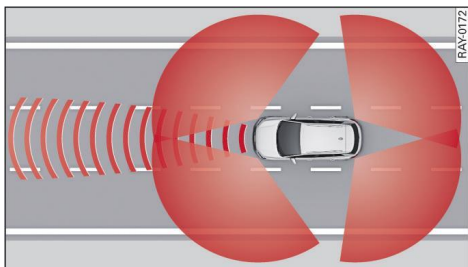


Fig. 72 Areas covered by sensors



Fig. 73 Area covered by reversing camera

The assist systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assist systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the entire area surrounding the vehicle can be detected ⇒ Fig. 72.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

Ultrasonic sensors

The ultrasonic sensors detect the area surrounding the vehicle at close range. The sensors may

be fitted at the rear, front and side, depending on the vehicle's equipment. The range depends on the location in which the ultrasonic sensors are fitted. The side zone is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the vehicle off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, the side zone is not shown.

Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ① ⇒ Fig. 73. Only this area is shown on the centre display ⇒ ⚠.

Further information

- Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
- Applies to: vehicles with electric folding exterior mirrors: System limitations may occur when manually adjusting the external mirrors. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in/out electrically.
- The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered or painted as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Accessories, stickers, decals, paint etc. must not be applied to the sensors and must be kept completely outside the sensors' and cameras' range of vision.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

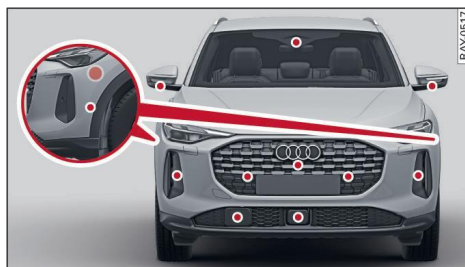
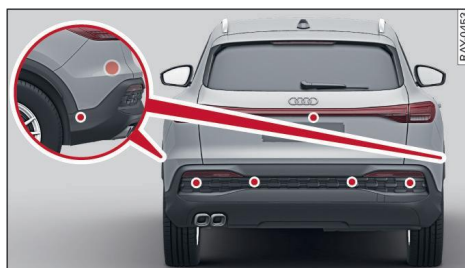
- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
- External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
- The areas covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 72 and cameras ⇒ Fig. 73 are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

**WARNING**

- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the assist systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.

**CAUTION**

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
- In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
 - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
 - Low obstacles
 - Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
 - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
 - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

Positions of sensors and cameras**Fig. 74** Front area: Sensors and cameras**Fig. 75** Rear area: Sensors and cameras**Front area**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Camera behind the windscreen
- Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
- Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
- Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle
- Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
- Radar sensors at the front at the bottom of the radiator grille

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Reversing camera in the boot lid
- Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
- Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle

Further information

- The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

Driver assist menu

Calling up driver assist menu

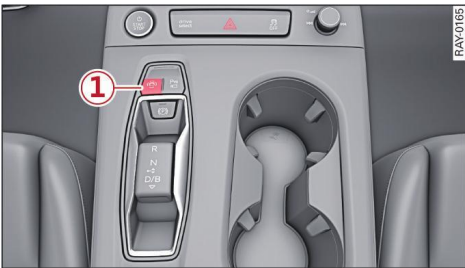


Fig. 76 Centre console: Button for driver assist systems

You can switch various assist functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Driver assist** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- ▶ Press the  button **1**, or
- ▶ Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press , or
- ▶ Select:  > **Driver assist**.

Press  to switch the desired systems on/off or press  to adjust the individual settings.

The symbol  shows whether a system will be switched on automatically or reset to the required standard values the next time the vehicle is started.

Resetting driver assist settings

You can reset all the driver assist settings to the factory settings at the same time under  in the **Driver assist** menu  *page 136*.

 **WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras *page 132* to *page 134*.

General driver messages on driver assist systems

Driver assist systems: currently restricted. The systems are updated regularly in the warning memory

If this message appears, one or more driver assist systems are restricted or unavailable. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. Please note the information and adapt your driving style accordingly.

Calling up the parking aid menu



Fig. 77 Centre console: Button for park assist systems

You can switch various parking functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Parking aid** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- ▶ Press the  button **1** in the centre console or select reverse gear.
- ▶ Press  on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Press  to switch the desired systems on/off or press  to adjust the individual settings.

In some countries, the parking aid menu cannot be called up when reverse gear is selected.

 **WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras *page 132* to *page 134*.

Warning systems

Speed warning

Introduction

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the centre display.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, for example.

Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the relevant country-specific speed limit regulations.

On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function also warns you when you reach a factory-set warning threshold. This warning threshold cannot be changed or switched off.

Setting the speed warning function

You can switch the manual speed warning on/off and set a custom warning threshold in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ [page 136](#).

Driver messages about the speed warning function

If  is shown along with a driver message and a tone sounds, the stored maximum speed has been exceeded. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored maximum speed.

Distance warning

Using the distance warning



Fig. 78 Instrument cluster showing distance warning

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approximately 65 km/h when the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance. The distance warning display ① draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold. The warning may be accompanied by further visual signals, depending on the situation.

Adjusting distance warning settings

You can switch the distance warning on/off or adjust the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ [page 136](#).

System limitations

The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

Further information

As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).

Driver messages about the distance warning

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

If  and a driver message about the active front assist are displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Side assist

Using the side assist

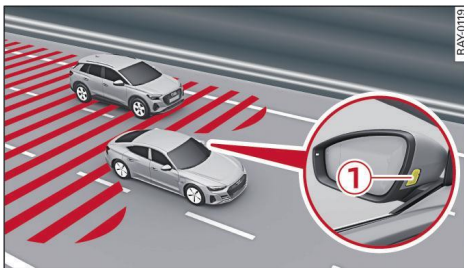


Fig. 79 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

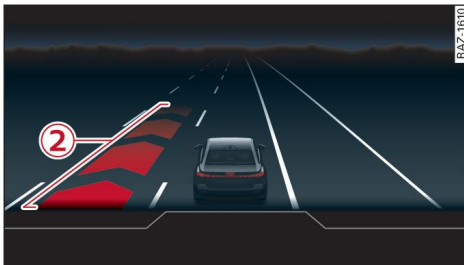


Fig. 80 Instrument cluster: Display showing side assist

Introduction

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle in the neighbouring lanes and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal  lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

- Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
- There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
- You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than approx. 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

If you have not yet operated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical at speeds of above approx. 10 km/h.

The system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by lighting up the warning signal  on the exterior mirror on the appropriate side.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash and a tone may sound to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an ►

additional warning ⇒ *page 144, Lane departure warning.*

You can switch the warning tone for the side assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136.*

Instrument cluster display

In addition to the warning signal on the exterior mirror, a graphic for the side assist (information and warning level) is shown in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Fig. 80*. The symbol  is shown in grey at the information level and red at the warning level.

System limits

The side assist is active at speeds of approx. walking pace and above.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇒ *page 135, Fig. 75*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

- When driving at the edge of your own lane
- When driving in narrow lanes
- When driving through a corner
- If there are high barriers next to the lane
- When driving through roadworks

Information on the side assist

- The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
- The systems are not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ *Fig. 79* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132 to page 134.*
- The warning signal may not light up in time or may not light up at all if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

Adjusting the side assist settings

You can switch the side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136.*

The warning signals light up briefly each time the side assist is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.

You can adjust the brightness in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Please adjust the brightness of the warning signal for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting.

Driver messages about the side assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇒ *page 135, Fig. 75*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on. ►

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Exit warning

Using the exit warning system

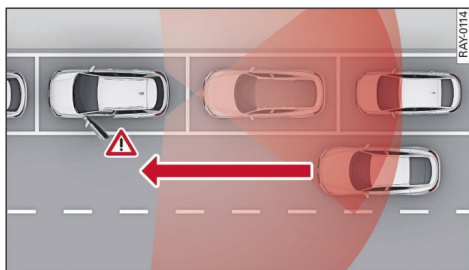


Fig. 81 Detected traffic approaching from behind

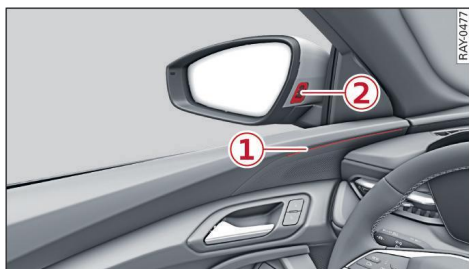


Fig. 82 Front door: Warning strip

Introduction

The exit warning system can recognise other road users approaching from behind (within certain system limits) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 81. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

Display and warnings

If transmission position P is selected and a road user judged by the system to be critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the warning signal on the exterior mirror ② will light up on that side of the vehicle. At the same time, the door may be slightly delayed in opening.

When the door is opened, the warning signals for the relevant side of the vehicle will flash and a warning tone will sound. The warning signals will flash and a warning tone will sound if road users judged by the system to be critical approach

when the door is already open. The warning signals will then remain lit until the critical situation is over.

Switching the exit warning system on/off

- You can switch the exit warning system on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ page 136.
- You can switch the warning tone for the exit warning system on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ page 136.

Information on the exit warning system

- The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the vehicle. After this period, the warning signals will light up briefly while the system is deactivated.
- The warning signals light up briefly each time the exit warning system is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.
- The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 81 is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.
- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.
- The exit warning system does not react to stationary objects.

– The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.

Driver messages about the exit warning system

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the exit warning system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
⇒ *page 135, Fig. 75*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Fatigue warning

Introduction

Within the system limits, the fatigue warning informs the driver whether they need to take a break.

Once the vehicle is moving, the fatigue warning analyses the driving behaviour in order to estimate whether the driver is fatigued. The result is compared continuously with the current driving behaviour.

If the comparison suggests that the driver is fatigued, the system will recommend a break via a display in the instrument cluster at speeds of 65 km/h and above. If severe fatigue is detected, a tone will also sound.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Never drive when you are tired – risk of accident! On long journeys, make sure to take

adequate breaks at regular intervals. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.

Overview of fatigue warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

Display	Description
	The system has detected a low level of fatigue.
	The system has detected a high level of fatigue. In addition, a tone will sound.

System limits of the fatigue warning

The system may misinterpret the driving behaviour in certain driving situations, such as the following:

- You are driving at a speed below approx. 60 km/h.
- You are driving at a speed above approx. 130 km/h.
- You are driving on winding roads.
- You are driving on a surface which is in poor condition.
- You are driving through roadworks.
- You are driving in unfavourable weather conditions.
- You have a dynamic driving style.
- You are distracted.
- You are towing a heavy or long trailer.
- You have activated lane guidance.
- You are falling asleep or into a microsleep.

In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

- If you switch off the vehicle.
- You unfasten the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door.

– The vehicle has been stationary for a certain length of time.

Setting the fatigue warning

You can switch the fatigue warning on/off or adjust the sensitivity in the **Driver assist** menu  [⇒ page 136](#).

A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the fatigue warning is switched off.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages about the fatigue warning

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the fatigue warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Distraction warning

Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, the distraction warning warns you when the system identifies that you are distracted from the road.

The system registers when you perform tasks while driving that distract you from the road, such as adjusting the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors.

When this is the case, the system warns you with a display in the instrument cluster starting at low speeds. If a high level of distraction is detected, a tone will sound to remind you to concentrate on the road.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 132](#) to [⇒ page 134](#).

Overview of distraction warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

Display	Description
	The system has detected a low level of distraction.
	The system has detected a high level of distraction. In addition, a tone will sound.

System limits of the distraction warning

In some cases, the system may be limited or not function at all:

- You are driving at a speed below approx. 10 km/h.
- You are severely distracted by external factors (such as the traffic situation).
- You are severely distracted by operating devices which are not connected to the vehicle (e.g. mobile devices).
- You are severely distracted by the infotainment system.

Setting the distraction warning

You can switch the distraction warning on/off or adjust the sensitivity in the **Driver assist** menu  [⇒ page 136](#).

A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the distraction warning is switched off.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages about the distraction warning

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the distraction warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Lane assist systems

Lane departure warning

Introduction

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems. Unlike the lane guidance function, which continuously keeps the vehicle in the centre of its lane with steering inputs when you are driving, the lane departure warning only provides a warning and intervenes just before you inadvertently drift out of the lane.

The **lane departure warning** detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may also vibrate and there may be a visual warning.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Using the lane departure warning

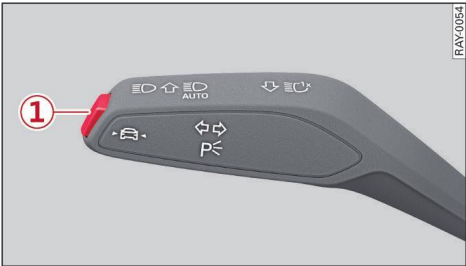


Fig. 83 Turn signal lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance

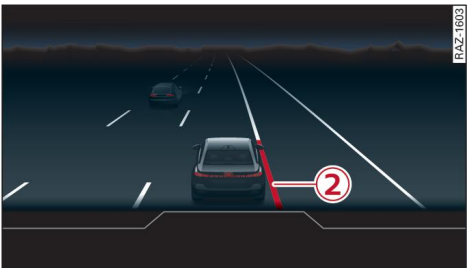


Fig. 84 Instrument cluster: Lane departure warning

Switching the lane departure warning on/off

- ▶ You can switch the lane departure warning on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*, or
- ▶ Press and hold the button **1** on the turn signal lever until the corresponding signal comes on in the instrument cluster.

If you press the button **1** on the turn signal lever briefly, this operates the lane guidance ⇒ *page 146*.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Overview of displays and warnings

Display	Meaning
	The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings.
	The lane departure warning system is switched on and is ready to give warnings on at least one side.
	The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation.
	The lane departure warning system is switched off ^{a)} . A driver message is also displayed.

^{a)} The exact appearance of the symbol may vary. ▶

In addition, corrective steering inputs are indicated in the instrument cluster by a red line ② on the corresponding side.

The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed. You can switch steering wheel vibration on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*.

The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.

Response when turn signals are on¹⁾

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times.
- The lane departure warning is not designed to avoid collisions with physical lane delimiters, such as concrete barriers.
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steer-

ing. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

System limits and restrictions of the lane departure warning

If  lights up, the lane departure warning function is switched on but not ready to give warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

- The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h²⁾ and above. It is not available at very high speeds.
- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- The turn signal was activated.
- The ESC is restricted or switched off.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Take over steering prompts from the lane departure warning

No steering activity detected

If no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals to take over the steering. Actively take over the steering immediately and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times.

If you do not take over the steering, the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇒ *page 162*.

Drive in lane centre

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the centre of the lane. ►

¹⁾ Depends on country/equipment fitted in the vehicle

²⁾ 55 km/h in certain countries

Further information

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driver messages about the lane departure warning

If  or ¹⁾ is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

The  symbol may also appear if the lane departure warning is switched on but not ready to give warnings.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Lane guidance

Introduction

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems. Unlike the lane guidance function, which continuously keeps the vehicle in the centre of its lane with steering inputs when you are driving, the lane departure warning only provides

a warning and intervenes just before you inadvertently drift out of the lane.

Within certain system limits, the **lane guidance** function makes steering inputs which help you keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Using lane guidance



Fig. 85 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

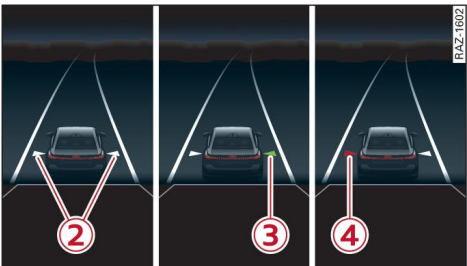


Fig. 86 Instrument cluster: Lane guidance

Switching lane guidance on/off

Important: The adaptive cruise control must be switched on ⇒ *page 154*.

- To switch lane guidance on/off, press the button  on the turn signal lever briefly.

¹⁾ The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

Linking lane guidance to the adaptive cruise assist

You can link activation/deactivation of the lane guidance to the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist in the **Driver assist**  menu ⇒ *page 161*.

Link switched on: Lane guidance is switched on/off in combination with the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist.

Link switched off: Lane guidance can be switched on/off independently of the adaptive cruise assist.

Display overview

An indication of whether lane guidance is available is provided on the corresponding side.

 White triangles – Lane guidance is switched on but not active.

 Green triangles – Lane guidance is active.

 Red triangle – Actively take over the steering immediately. The system has reached its limits ⇒ *page 147*.

 /  – Actively take over the steering immediately. No steering activity has been detected ⇒ *page 147*.

Further information

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The lane guidance serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle, especially with regard to steering. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times.

Lane guidance limitations

If  lights up in white ⇒ *page 146, Fig. 86*, lane guidance is switched on but not active on the corresponding side. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur, for example:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- The turn signal was activated.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Take over steering prompts from the lane guidance function

System limit reached

If  lights up in red ⇒ *page 146, Fig. 86*, a tone sounds and an animated warning appears, you must take over the steering. A system limit been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

No steering activity detected

If  or  lights up and a corresponding message appears, actively take over the steering immediately. The prompt to take control may be accompanied by an animated warning and additional acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation. Insufficient steering activity has been detected. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations. If you do not take over the steering, lane guidance will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇒ *page 162*.

Further information

The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driver messages about the lane guidance function

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane guidance function is unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Speed assist systems

Speed regulation systems

Introduction

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system, the speed limiter and the predictive speed limiter.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle; this applies in particular to braking, regulating the speed and maintaining an appropriate distance to other vehicles.
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the set speed in such situations.



CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇒ *page 103*. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

Information on the cruise control system

The cruise control system helps you to remain at a constant speed that you have set. The speed can be set to approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the set speed by braking and accelerating.

Information on the speed limiter

The speed limiter helps you to avoid exceeding a speed that you have set. The speed can be set to approx. 20 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed. If the accelerator is not pressed, the system will not accelerate the vehicle.

Information on the predictive speed limiter

Information on use

Important: **Adaptation to speed limits when speed limiter active** must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 136*. The map material on the navigation system must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇒ *page 212*.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the predictive speed limiter expands the speed limiter function by taking into account speed limits identified by the system on the route being driven. The set speed is adjusted to the speed limit identified by the system. The system uses the traffic sign recognition function and the data from the navigation system as reference. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

Further information

It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.

Whenever you switch on the vehicle and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially limits the speed to 130 km/h¹⁾. If you select a new set speed manually while driving on a road section with no speed limit, the setting is stored and subsequently applied on the next road section with no speed limit.

When entering and exiting motorways, the system briefly switches to the manual speed limiter.

While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control



¹⁾ May vary in different countries.

response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

The cruising speed is adjusted on the speedometer when a speed limit is detected even when the predictive speed limiter is not regulating the speed.

System limitations

The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. In certain circumstances, the maximum permissible speed may be exceeded while the predictive speed limiter is limiting the current road speed.

If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition or if the map material on the navigation system is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify km/h or mph, depending on the country.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Overview of indicator lamps for speed regulation systems

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display	Description
	The cruise control system is switched on but not activated.
	The cruise control system is switched on and is actively keeping the vehicle at the set speed.
LIM	The speed limiter is switched on but is not activated.

Display	Description
LIM AUTO	The predictive speed limiter is switched on but is not activated.
LIM	The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the vehicle to the set speed.
LIM AUTO	The predictive speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the vehicle to the set speed.
LIM!	The set speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.
LIM AUTO!	The cruising speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

Information is also provided in the head-up display.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Using speed regulation systems



Fig. 87 Control lever: Switching the system on



Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise control

Fig. 88 Control lever: Deactivating distance regulating function

Switching the system on/off

- Pull the control lever towards you to position ② until it engages to switch the system on.
- Pull the control lever towards you to position ③ until it engages to switch the system off. The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

Selecting the speed regulation system

- To switch between the cruise control system/ adaptive cruise assist and the speed limiter, press button ④ on the control lever.
- To deactivate the adaptive cruise control's distance regulating function¹⁾, press and hold the rocker towards ⑤ ⇒ Fig. 88. The cruise control functions remain available.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the regulating function.

- Press the **SET** button ① on the control lever.

Setting a new speed

Important: The system must be switched on.

- To increase or reduce the set speed in small steps, briefly push the control lever one level upwards or downwards to position **+**/**-** ⇒ Fig. 87.
- To increase or reduce the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the control lever two levels upwards or downwards to position **+**/**-**.
- To increase or reduce the set speed continuously, push the control lever one or two levels upwards or downwards to position **+**/**-** and hold it there.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed even when the speed regulation systems are inactive.

- Press the control lever towards **+**/**-** ⇒ Fig. 87.
- To activate the preset speed, pull the lever towards you to position ②.

Temporarily overriding the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the set speed for a long time.

Temporarily overriding the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

¹⁾ Depends on the country and the vehicle's equipment

- To reactivate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position ②.

The stored preset speed or the speed limit currently detected will be reactivated automatically as soon as the road speed drops below the preset speed.

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

- Push the control lever to position ③ (click stop not engaged).
- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

If you deactivate the system briefly, the preset speed will remain stored.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: If you press the **SET** button ① at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. The vehicle will accelerate to this speed.
- The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so safely.
- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.

Driver messages about the cruise control systems

If  or /LIM is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the systems later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

LIM Speed limiter: function to use speed limit currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The predictive speed limiter function is temporarily unavailable. This is the case, for example, if the speed limit is below the minimum speed which can be set or if the function is not available in the country where you are currently driving. The speed will be limited to the speed which you have set manually.

Adaptive cruise control

Introduction

The **adaptive cruise control** assists you while driving by controlling the vehicle's speed within certain limits imposed by the system. If a vehicle is detected in front, the adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate the vehicle and maintain the set distance to the vehicle in front as consistently as possible within certain limits imposed by the system.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions. ►

On vehicles with adaptive cruise assist which are fitted with certain equipment, the **predictive cruise control** can adjust the cruising speed in response to events ⇒ *page 159*.

On vehicles with adaptive cruise assist which are fitted with certain equipment, the **lane guidance** function can provide assistance ⇒ *page 146*.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

System limitations of the adaptive cruise control

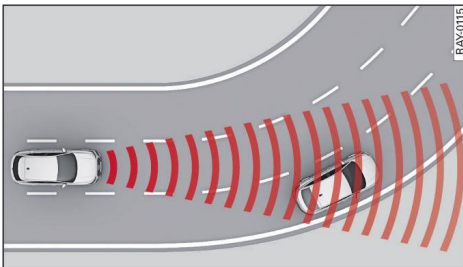


Fig. 89 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise control functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

- When driving into a bend ⇒ *Fig. 89* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
- The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision.
- In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise control may no longer be recognised, and the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.

- The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
- The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
- The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
- The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.
- The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
- The regulating function of the adaptive cruise control is only available when the ESC and traction control system have been switched on and are fully functional. Switch the systems on beforehand if necessary.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Overview of displays for the adaptive cruise control

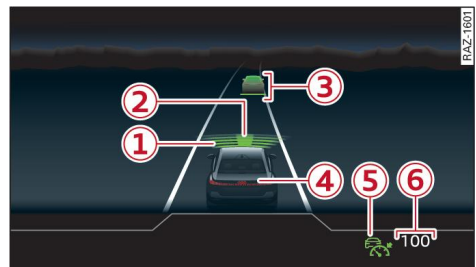


Fig. 90 Instrument cluster: Overview of displays

The driving situation and the settings are displayed on the instrument cluster and the head-up display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

- ① Display for active distance regulating function
- ② A vehicle in front has been detected. The green marking points towards the vehicle based on which the system is currently regulating.
- ③ Vehicle based on which system is regulating (highlighted)
- ④ Own vehicle
- ⑤  – Display for adaptive cruise control
- ⑤  – The adaptive cruise control is switched on but not active.
- ⑤  – You must intervene. The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently
⇒ page 156.
- ⑥ Set speed



Fig. 92 Control lever: Setting a new speed

- ④ If the control lever is engaged in this position, the system is switched off.
- ① If the control lever is engaged in this position, the system is switched on.
- ② **SET** Set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control.
- ③ **LIM** Switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive cruise control.

Switching on

- To switch the adaptive cruise control on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the regulating function:

- Press the **SET** button ②. The set speed will be shown ⑥ ⇒ page 153, Fig. 90.
- If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed.

If the system has detected a vehicle in front, it will regulate your vehicle's speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically within the limits imposed by the system.

If the system has not detected a vehicle in front, the set speed will be maintained as consistently as possible.

You can set any speed between 20 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range ¹⁾. If you ►

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

Using the adaptive cruise control

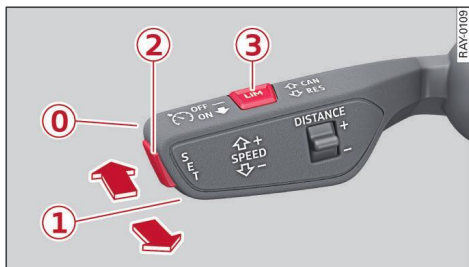


Fig. 91 Control lever: Operating the adaptive cruise control

¹⁾ Depends on country and drive system

store the current speed while travelling at a speed which is below the minimum speed which can actually be set, the minimum speed will be set as the cruising speed. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow  **CAN**, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

 is displayed and the graphic  in front of the vehicle ① goes out ⇒ *page 153, Fig. 90*.

Temporarily overriding the preset speed

- To override the regulating function temporarily in order to accelerate, press the accelerator.

The distance regulating function is not active.  is displayed and the graphic  in front of the vehicle ① goes out ⇒ *page 153, Fig. 90*.

Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- To resume the regulating function, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow  **RES**.
- If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to resume the regulating function.

Changing the set speed

- To change the set speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards towards /.
- To change the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards /.
- To change the set speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards towards / and hold the lever until the desired speed is set.

Applies to vehicles with predictive cruise control: The cruising speed can be adapted in anticipation of events ⇒ *page 159*.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is inactive, by briefly pushing the lever in the appropriate direction /. To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow  **RES**.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise control if you will not be using it for an extended period of time.

- Push the lever away from you to position  until it engages.

The symbol  will disappear.

The speed setting is deleted for safety reasons when you switch off the vehicle or the adaptive cruise control.

Further information

If the speed limiter is selected after the vehicle is switched on, the adaptive cruise control must have been selected beforehand. Press the  button  to select the adaptive cruise control.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The adaptive cruise control serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- Only switch on the adaptive cruise control in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could

override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.

- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise control. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

Take over braking prompt

If the system's braking performance is not sufficient, a message will appear instructing you to take over.  will also light up. Apply the brakes to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle in front.

The take over prompt may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual warning signals, depending on the situation.

**WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The adaptive cruise control serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Setting the distance regulating function



Fig. 93 Control lever: Setting the distance

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes within the

limits imposed by the system. It then maintains a constant set distance. If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

- To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
- To change the set distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch towards / again.

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The newly set distance will be displayed briefly. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set:

Sym- bol	Time-based dis- tance	Distance at 100 km/h
①	approx. 1 second	approx. 28 metres
②	approx. 1.3 sec- onds	approx. 36 metres
③	approx. 1.8 sec- onds (generally recommended)	approx. 50 metres
④	approx. 2.4 sec- onds	approx. 67 metres
⑤	approx. 3.6 sec- onds	approx. 100 me- tres

The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

Deactivating/activating the distance regulating function

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may also be possible to use the system without the distance regulating function. In this case, the system functions in the same way as the regular cruise control system.

- To deactivate the distance regulating function, press and hold the rocker switch towards  ►

until the distance regulating function is switched off and the  symbol lights up.

- To reactivate the distance regulating function, press the rocker switch in either direction (/ ).

Driving characteristics during assisted driving

The driving characteristics of the adaptive cruise control and the haptic feedback of the lane guidance vary depending on the vehicle's equipment and depend on:

- The set distance
- The selected Audi drive select mode
- The individual settings related to the driving characteristics in the **Driver assist**  menu
⇒ page 136

Store last distance

In the **Driver assist**  menu, you can set
⇒ page 136 whether you require the most recently set distance to be stored. If the distance is not stored, the distance  is automatically selected as the default setting every time the vehicle is switched on.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

Driving in congested traffic

Stopping with the adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the system applies the brakes (within the limits imposed by the system) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise control¹⁾

When a message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off is shown on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will start moving ⇒ . The remaining time may be shown by the  symbol.

If your vehicle has been stopped for too long, it will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons. A driver message will inform you that the vehicle is no longer ready to drive off and the  symbol in front of the vehicle  will go out
⇒ page 153, Fig. 90.

- You can extend or re-activate the period in which the vehicle is ready to drive off automatically for a short time by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow
⇒ RES ⇒ page 154, Fig. 91.
- To set the vehicle in motion again immediately, tap the accelerator with your foot.

Safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇒ . Various feedback will draw your attention to the danger if an obstacle is detected.

The  symbol will be shown in red in front of the vehicle  ⇒ page 153, Fig. 90 and the driver message **Warning: obstacle!** will appear. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

- If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

Further information

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise control is activated only if

- the driver's seat belt is fastened,
- all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
- the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.
- When the message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off ¹⁾ is shown, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

Additional functions of the adaptive cruise control

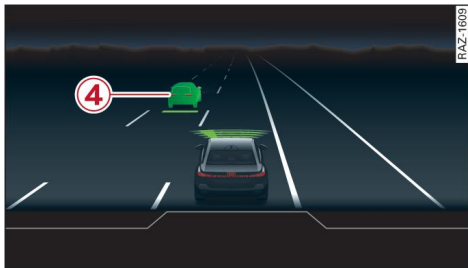


Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: Overtake prevention

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise control must be activated for all additional functions that depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Overriding the cruise control or distance regulating function

- ▶ To briefly override the adaptive cruise control, pull and hold the lever $\Rightarrow$ page 154, Fig. 91 towards you in the direction of the arrow $\Rightarrow$ RES.

If a vehicle is detected in front: The distance is reduced to a closer distance than the one set for a brief period within the limits imposed by the system. This makes it easier to merge into another lane due to your lane ending, for example.

If there is no vehicle in front: The vehicle accelerates faster and the cruising speed is overridden. The current set speed may also be exceeded. The distance regulating function remains active.

Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise control concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens

automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

Overtake prevention¹⁾

The graphic ④ of a vehicle detected in the next lane appears when the adaptive cruise control adjusts the speed to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left¹⁾.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras $\Rightarrow$ page 132 to $\Rightarrow$ page 134.
- The additional functions are designed to assist the driver. As the driver, when you use the functions you still maintain full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Driver messages about the adaptive cruise control

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise control functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors $\Rightarrow$ page 135. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Predictive cruise control

Introduction

The predictive cruise control adapts the cruising speed of the adaptive cruise control to

¹⁾ Depending on country

recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead.

The adaptive cruise assist then accelerates the vehicle so that it is travelling at the speed you most recently set.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Using the predictive cruise control

Important

- At least one predictive cruise control function must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*.
- The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇒ *page 154*.
- Within the limits imposed by the system, it may occasionally not be possible to react to certain speed limits.
- The map material on the navigation system must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇒ *page 212*.

Event symbols

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, event symbols may indicate what the predictive cruise control is reacting to:

Symbol	Description
	Speed limit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Speed limit no longer applies
	Bend
	Exit
	Intersection

Symbol	Description
	Roundabout
	Stop sign with detected stop line. The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	If the symbol appears in green and white, a stop sign has been detected but no stop line has been recognised. You must apply the brakes yourself.

Manual or automatic acceptance of adaptation to speed limits

In the **Driver assist** menu , you can select ⇒ *page 136* whether adaptation to speed limits should be performed automatically or whether the driver must confirm this manually for each event.

- To confirm adaptation to a detected speed limit and accept it manually, pull the control lever ⇒ *page 154*, *Fig. 91* towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ➞ **RES**.

Overriding the predictive control

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇒ *page 154*, *Fig. 92* can be used to adapt the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is interrupted if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise assist then regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

Further information

- When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The set speed is adjusted when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise control is not actively regulating the speed. ►

- When the recuperation function is active, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
- The system's control response depends on the driving characteristics set for the adaptive cruise assist and/or (on vehicles with Audi drive select) the selected mode.
- After the vehicle is switched on, a speed of 130 km/h¹⁾ is set automatically when the vehicle is first driven onto a motorway or similar road, provided that no speed limits are detected and you have not set a different cruising speed.
- The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition or if the map material on the navigation system is incorrect or out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
- While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Adjusting the predictive cruise control

You can switch the predictive cruise control on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ [page 136](#).

Adaptation to speed limits

The adaptation according to speed limits can be switched on or off. The optional control setting **Adjust with tolerance** can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the preset speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Adaptation to route ahead

The adaptation according to the route ahead can be switched on or off. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control and you can also set how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Adaptation to right of way

The regulation for right of way that takes e.g. detected stop signs into account, can be switched on/off.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care – risk of accident!
- The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
- The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).

¹⁾ Depending on country

Combined assist functions

Adaptive cruise assist plus

Introduction

The adaptive cruise assist plus combines the predictive cruise control ⇒ *page 158* and the lane guidance function ⇒ *page 146* with the functions of the adaptive cruise control ⇒ *page 152*.

The displays for the availability and status are the same as those for the individual systems. Please note the corresponding descriptions and system restrictions.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The adaptive cruise assist plus serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist plus in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist plus. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

Link switched on: Lane guidance is switched on/off in combination with the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist.

Link switched off: Lane guidance can be switched on/off independently of the adaptive cruise assist.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driver messages about the adaptive cruise assist plus

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist plus functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Linking lane guidance to the adaptive cruise assist plus

You can link activation of the lane guidance to the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 161*.

Systems for braking and taking evasive action

Emergency assist

Introduction

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. In such cases, the system is activated automatically. The driver is prompted to take control of the vehicle by visual, acoustic and haptic measures. If the driver does not take control, the system takes over operation of the vehicle within the limits imposed by the system to bring it to a standstill in the same lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 132* to ⇨ *page 134*.
- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop. If the system is activated at an undesirable time, you can cancel the emergency assist.
- The emergency assist is not designed to avoid collisions with physical lane delimiters, such as concrete barriers.

Measures and availability of the emergency assist

Measures implemented by the emergency assist

The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. The following measures may be implemented in stages:

- Visual and acoustic warnings
- Support with controlling the vehicle through distance regulation and lane guidance
- Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
- Infotainment volume reduction

- Seat belt jolt
- Brake jolt
- Hazard warning lights are activated
- Protective measures of the proactive occupant protection system are triggered
- The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
- The vehicle's horn sounds repeatedly

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake is applied, transmission position P is selected, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are switched on. A few seconds after the vehicle has stopped, an emergency call¹⁾ will be placed if necessary.

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected and the vehicle equipment. Some measures may be modified or skipped.

Availability of the emergency assist

The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when it is switched on and lane guidance is active. When lane guidance is not active, the emergency assist is only available at speeds above approx. 65 km/h.

If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise control, lane guidance or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted.

After the emergency assist is activated, you must wait for a short period of time before it can be activated again.

Display overview

If the system detects that the driver is inactive, it issues a warning in the form of the  symbol and a corresponding driver message.

The  symbol shown by the emergency assist indicates that the distance regulation is active and the system is intervening in the braking.

The  symbol shown by the emergency assist indicates that the distance regulation and lane

¹⁾ This function is not available on all models or in all countries.

guidance are active and the system is intervening in the braking.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Using the emergency assist

Automatic activation

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the emergency assist is activated automatically if it detects that the driver is inactive.

If the vehicle is being driven manually without any assist systems that intervene in the steering, the time that passes before the driver is identified as inactive can be adjusted via the sensitivity setting. The sensitivity can be adjusted in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. Low sensitivity results in the emergency assist being activated later if the vehicle is being driven manually without any assist systems that intervene in the steering.

Cancelling the emergency assist

Some of the possible ways to cancel the emergency assist are:

- Moving the steering wheel, or
- Applying the brake pedal, or
- Pressing the accelerator firmly.

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by moving out of transmission position P or by releasing the parking brake ⇒ *page 108*.

If you cancel the intervention by the system,  will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

Switching on/off

You can switch the emergency assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*.

If you switch the system off,  will light up and a corresponding message will appear.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driver messages about the emergency assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Check whether the issue still occurs the next time you switch on the vehicle.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Active front assist

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the active front assist can identify if there is a danger of collision and initiate appropriate safety measures to avoid a collision occurring. You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the active front assist intervenes.

In certain situations, functions of the proactive occupant protection system may also be triggered.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Functions of the active front assist

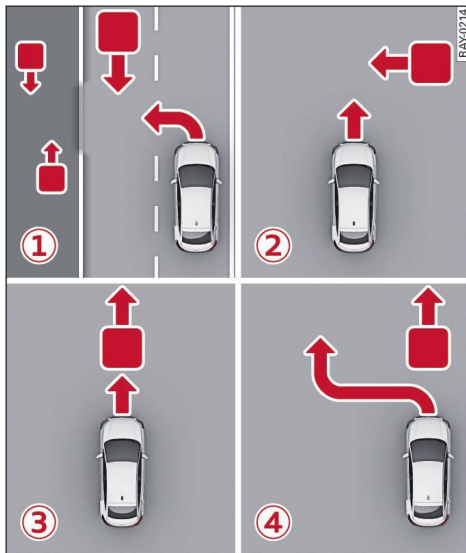


Fig. 95 Functions of the active front assist (examples)

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the active front assist can initiate appropriate safety measures to avoid a collision occurring in the following situations:

① You are turning off and an object comes towards you or crosses the road into which you are turning

The system may intervene when turning off as soon as the vehicle is moving.

If you are travelling at a speed of up to approx. 25 km/h, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

- Oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane.
- Road users crossing the road (e.g. pedestrians or cyclists).

② An object crosses your vehicle's path

The system may intervene when crossing objects are detected as soon as the vehicle is moving.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

- Up to approx. 65 km/h: vehicles crossing the road.

- Up to approx. 85 km/h: road users crossing the road (e.g. pedestrians or cyclists).

③ You are driving towards an object in front of you in your lane

The system may intervene when objects are detected in your lane from speeds of approx. 5 km/h.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

- Up to approx. 85 km/h: stationary or moving pedestrians and oncoming cyclists or vehicles.
- Up to approx. 120 km/h: stationary or moving cyclists.
- Up to approx. 250 km/h: stationary vehicles and vehicles that are moving slowly or braking heavily.

④ You must take evasive action to avoid an object in your lane

The assistance when avoiding a collision is activated at speeds above approx. 30 km/h.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and assist you in avoiding the following objects:

- Up to approx. 85 km/h: stationary or pedestrians/cyclists moving along the road.
- Up to approx. 150 km/h: stationary vehicles and vehicles that are moving slowly or braking heavily.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → page 132 to → page 134.

System limits of the active front assist

The active front assist may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

- In tight corners or during dynamic manoeuvres.
- If the vehicle is in towing a trailer.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- If the brake lights are faulty.
- If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
- If the sensors or the front camera are faulty.

- If there is a fault in the ESC or if the ESC is restricted/deactivated.
- If the vehicle towing another vehicle



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The protection provided by the active front assist is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- Among other things, the active front assist does not react to animals and objects such as walls, poles, fences, railbound vehicles and waste containers.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- If the system intervenes, there is a risk of injury, especially if occupants are not sitting in the correct position or not wearing a seat belt. Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇒ *page 65*.
- If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual. The reaction of the active front assist may be restricted or the system may be unavailable if the vehicle is towing a heavy load.

Overview of measures to avoid a collision

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

The active front assist functions are unavailable if is displayed on the centre display, e.g. if the

rear cross-traffic assist has temporarily been deactivated.

Visual warnings

Depending on the measure initiated and the hazard situation, a symbol and a corresponding driver messages may appear in the instrument cluster.

The symbol appears if one of the following measures is initiated:

- Collision warning
- Brake jolt
- Automatic brake pressure increase
- Automatic braking

The symbol appears if the swerve support function is active.

Cross-traffic information

If road users crossing the vehicle's path are detected, the symbol appears on the instrument cluster and (if fitted) on the head-up display. If the parking aid is activated, the symbol also appears on the centre display.

Collision warning

If a potential collision risk is detected, you will be informed of this risk by a visual and acoustic warning.

Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

Automatic braking

The system can, subject to general system limits, apply the brakes heavily in order to avoid a collision or reduce the impact of a potential collision. If the system brakes the vehicle to a stop, the vehicle will then be held at a standstill. If the vehicle cannot be held at a standstill, a driver

message will appear and you must take control of the vehicle.

Swerve support

If you take action to avoid an obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve support will assist you when you are steering the vehicle. As long as you are steering actively, the function brakes individual wheels and applies a small steering impulse to stabilise and, if necessary, correct the evasive manoeuvre. The driver is responsible for steering for the entire duration of the evasive manoeuvre.

Using the active front assist

Overriding the active front assist

You can cancel collision avoidance measures initiated by the system by pressing the accelerator firmly or steering.

Adjusting the active front assist settings

You can switch the active front assist and some of the measures for avoiding a collision on/off and adjust the settings in the **Driver assist** menu
⇒ *page 136*.

If the system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch the vehicle on.

Dealing with undesired system interventions

Undesired system interventions may occur in particular situations.

Audi recommends switching off the active front assist in the following situations:

- If you are using the vehicle away from public roads.
- If the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a transporter or similar.
- After an impact on components around the radar sensors, e.g. if the front of the vehicle has been damaged in an accident.
- If the radar sensors or the camera are faulty or the windscreen is damaged in the area around the camera's field of vision.

- If the system is triggered at an undesirable time on several occasions.



WARNING

Undesired system interventions may result in an accident. Do not use the system in situations where undesired system interventions may occur.

Driver messages about the active front assist

When the vehicle is started, the  indicator lamp lights up to indicate that the system is only available with restrictions. The indicator lamp will go out as soon as the system is available without restrictions.

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the active front assist and the distance warning are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the vehicle back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Rear turn assist

Using the rear turn assist

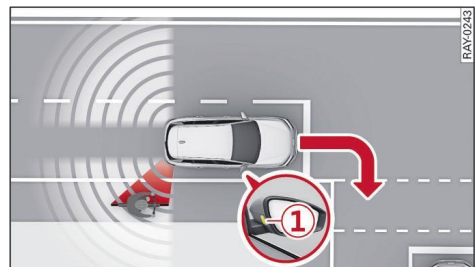


Fig. 96 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

Introduction

The rear turn assist monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle in the neighbouring lanes and helps you when turning off. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal ① lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

- Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
- There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
- You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than approx. 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

When you switch a turn signal on, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by activating the warning signal ① on the corresponding exterior mirror.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical and with which the collision risk is increasing by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror. A warning tone will sound if the situation becomes more critical. The system may also jolt the brakes as an additional warning.

Instrument cluster display

In addition to the warning signal on the exterior mirror, a graphic for the rear turn assist (information and warning level) is shown in the instrument cluster. The symbol is shown in grey at the information level and red at the warning level.

Switching the rear turn assist on/off

You can switch the rear turn assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 136*.

System limits

The rear turn assist is active at speeds of up to approx. 60 km/h when a turn signal is on. The system is not available at very low speeds.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 135, Fig. 74, ⇨ page 135, Fig. 75*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

- When driving at the edge of your own lane
- When driving in narrow lanes
- When driving through a corner
- If there are high barriers next to the lane
- When driving through roadworks

Information on the rear turn assist

- The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
- The systems are not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 138, Fig. 79* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 132* to ⇨ *page 134*.
- The warning signal may not light up in time or may not light up at all if other vehicles

are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

- The rear turn assist does not react to people. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.

Driver messages about the rear turn assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear turn assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Further assist systems

Predictive efficiency messages (efficiency assist)

Using predictive efficiency messages

Introduction

The predictive efficiency messages can help you to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When you have switched on automatic recuperation and you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the recuperation and coasting phases depending on the situation.

Important

- The cruise control system, the adaptive cruise control or the adaptive cruise assist must not be regulating the speed.
- The speed must be at least 30 km/h.
- The remaining route must be long enough for the system to react to the event.

Display¹⁾

The  symbol appears in the instrument cluster display and on the head-up display as soon as the efficiency assist recommends that you take your foot off the accelerator.

In driving program S and on vehicles with Audi drive select, the type of information displayed may vary depending on the transmission position and on the driving mode currently selected.

On vehicles with Audi drive select, more messages are shown in the **efficiency** mode.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, event symbols may indicate which event the function is reacting to:

Symbol	Description
	Speed limit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Bend
	Exit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Intersection
	Roundabout
	Gradient
	Vehicle ahead

Switching the predictive efficiency messages on/off

You can switch the predictive messages on/off in the **Driver assist**  menu ⇒ [page 136](#).

System limitations

- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data are and the area detected by the camera.
- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.

Further information

- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
- If a route has been planned on vehicles with a navigation system, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead. ►

¹⁾ The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

 **WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → *page 132* to → *page 134*.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Introduction

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed.

The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.

 **WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → *page 132* to → *page 134*.

Traffic sign recognition display

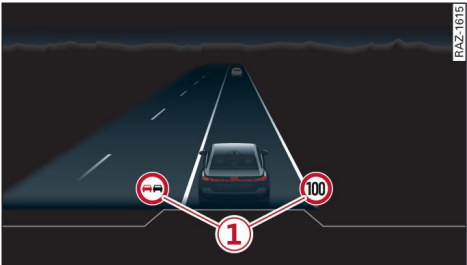


Fig. 97 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs ① which currently apply are shown in the instrument cluster.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions, these are displayed under the following conditions:

	A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected and the vehicle sensors, e.g. the rain sensor, detect that the restriction actually applies.
	A temporary speed restriction for fog is detected and the front camera detects that the restriction actually applies.
	A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
	The vehicle is towing a trailer and the Trailer-specific speed limits option is activated on the centre display. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayed. This only applies to factory-fitted towing brackets.

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. The number displayed may represent mph or km/h, depending on the country.

 **WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → *page 132* to → *page 134*.

System limits of the traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the situations such as the following:

- The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries.
- If the vehicle speed is too high.
- If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs deviate from the standard appearance.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
- If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
- If speed stickers on slow-moving vehicles (such as heavy goods vehicles) are detected.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect – risk of accident! It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.

Setting the traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign-based speed warning

You can switch the visual and acoustic speed warnings on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the ***** button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Depending on the country, speed warnings are either reset to the default setting or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Warning threshold if a speed is exceeded (km/h)

– You can set a custom warning threshold in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will flash continuously. Depending on the setting, a warning tone may also sound briefly. Depending on the country, the value set is either stored after a restart or reset to the default setting if a warning threshold of 5 km/h or 10 km/h was previously selected.

Warning tone when speed is exceeded – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic warning which is issued when a specific speed is exceeded in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. Depending on the country, the setting is either reset to the default or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Tone when speed limit changes – You can activate/deactivate an acoustic warning which is issued when a speed limit changes in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. The most recent setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Settings related to towing a trailer¹⁾

You can switch the trailer-specific speed warning on/off and adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*. The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and only apply to factory-fitted towing brackets.

Available settings:

Trailer-specific speed limits

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

Maximum trailer speed setting (km/h)



¹⁾ Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. The setting is adjusted when you are driving in a country where a different maximum speed is permitted for the trailer. You must set the appropriate value when you first drive in the country in question.

Driver messages about the traffic sign recognition

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the camera-based traffic sign recognition functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message may appear for some of the displays indicating the cause and possible remedy or changes made based on the speed warning. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the front camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the front camera and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Hazard alerts

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, your vehicle may be able to receive, send and display hazard alerts. The hazard alerts function can inform you about hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility on your route or in the vicinity of your vehicle. If a hazard presented by a vehicle ahead of you is identified, this hazard alert is sent to your vehicle online and displayed in the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when hazard alerts are displayed. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇄  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Overview of hazard alert displays



Fig. 98 Warning symbols shown by the hazard alerts function

The warning symbols shown by the hazard alerts function inform you about different hazards in the vicinity of your vehicle.

	Meaning
①	Accident: This hazard alert warns you about a vehicle that has been involved in an accident.
②	Breakdown: This hazard alert warns you about a vehicle that has broken down.
③	Skidding risk: This hazard alert warns you about slippery or icy conditions, for example.
④	Poor visibility: This hazard alert warns you about poor visibility due to fog or heavy rain, for example.

System limits of hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function is subject to system limits. Unrestricted use cannot be guaranteed in all traffic situations and driving modes. Availability depends on a number of factors including:

- The vehicles ahead of you are equipped with the technology to send hazard alerts.
- The vehicles ahead of you have detected a hazard.

- The hazard alerts are correctly transferred to your vehicle from the third party.

Possible causes for undetected hazards:

- Accident: The vehicle did not make an emergency call.
- Breakdown: The vehicle's hazard warning lights were not switched on.
- Skidding risk: Vehicles travelling ahead did not identify reduced friction between the tyres and the road.
- Poor visibility: The rear fog light or wipers were not activated on vehicles travelling ahead.

Using hazard alerts

Hazard alerts are shown in different displays. When a current hazard alert is received, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and the head-up display. A message is included in some cases. Hazards are shown on the navigation map in the centre display in the form of warning symbols.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

Hazard alerts in the instrument cluster

Depending on the hazard alert received, a notification may be displayed in the instrument cluster for several seconds.

- ▶ To hide the notification, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Hazard alerts on the centre display

Hazards caused by accidents, breakdowns and skidding risks are displayed on the map.

When route guidance is active, hazards on your route are displayed as coloured warning symbols. Hazards that are not on your route are displayed as greyed-out warning symbols. All hazards are displayed in colour on the map when route guidance is not active.

- ▶ Select:  > **Navigation**.
- ▶ Press on a warning symbol in the map to view detailed information about the hazard alert.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Proactive occupant protection

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the proactive occupant protection can identify critical driving situations and initiate appropriate safety measures to protect the vehicle occupants.

When the system initiates occupant protection measures, the  symbol appears in the instrument cluster.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The protection provided by the proactive occupant protection is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision on its own. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!

Proactive occupant protection functions

The proactive occupant protection system consists of several functions which are able to react to different situations within the system limits by implementing measures to protect the vehicle occupants.

Proactive occupant protection

The main proactive occupant protection function reacts in critical situations, e.g. if the vehicle understeers or oversteers, during preventative/emergency braking with the electromechanical

parking brake or in the event of a minor collision. The system is able to react at speeds from approx. 30 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, front

The front proactive occupant protection function reacts when a collision is likely to occur at the front of the vehicle. Provided that the active front assist is switched on, the system is able to react at speeds from approx. 15 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, rear¹⁾

The rear proactive occupant protection function reacts when a rear collision is likely to be caused by the vehicle behind. The system is able to react at speeds up to approx. 250 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, side

The side proactive occupant protection function reacts when a collision is likely to be caused by a vehicle crossing in front of the vehicle or a vehicle coming from the side. The system is able to react at speeds up to approx. 250 km/h when driving forwards and approx. 20 km/h when reversing.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).
- The rear and side proactive occupant protection functions do not react to people, animals and objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Measures initiated by the proactive occupant protection system

Only some of the occupant protection functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following measures may be initiated in certain situations:

- Visual and acoustic warnings.
- The hazard warning lights will be activated¹⁾.
- Reversible seat belt tensioners.
- The windows and the panoramic glass roof (if fitted) will be closed.

Driver messages about the proactive occupant protection system

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the proactive occupant protection functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ [page 135](#).

An Audi drive select mode might be selected that limits the functions of the proactive occupant protection system. Select a different Audi drive select mode if desired. ►

System limits of the proactive occupant protection system

The proactive occupant protection functions may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

- If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
- If there is a fault in the active front assist.
- If there is a fault in the side assist function.
- If there is a fault in the ESC or if the ESC is restricted/deactivated.
- If the vehicle is in towing a trailer.

¹⁾ Depending on country

If the message is still displayed when you switch the vehicle back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Traffic light information

Introduction

Within the system limits, the traffic light information function helps to reduce stop-start traffic and improve the flow of traffic. For this purpose, you are shown the ideal speed at which to travel so that you reach the next set of traffic lights when they are green.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Never allow the displayed traffic light information to distract your attention from the road – risk of accident. Always monitor the distance to other vehicles and the area around the vehicle. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- Never allow the traffic light information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks – risk of accident. It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.

Overview of traffic light information displays

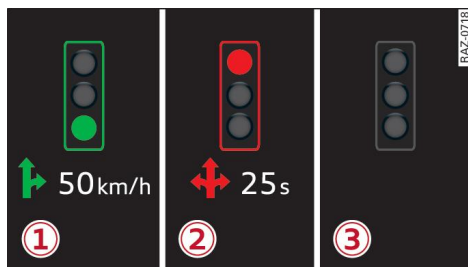


Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to reach the next traffic light on green ①. It also informs you how long you will be waiting at the next red light ②. The traffic light information is shown in the instrument cluster and head-up display as soon as traffic light data is available. If certain system limits are reached, the speed recommendation or the waiting time at a red traffic light cannot be shown and a grey traffic light symbol ③ is shown instead. This is the case if the distance to the traffic light is less than 30 metres, for example.

System limits of the traffic light information function

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If the current speed limit is being exceeded.
- If the vehicle is travelling below a specific speed.
- If the next traffic light is less than approx. 30 m away.
- If the waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds.
- If no traffic light data are available.
- If the map material on the navigation system or the navigation data being used are out of date.
- If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle.
- If traffic lights are being serviced.
- If the data connection has been interrupted.
- If the privacy settings in your vehicle are incompatible.
- If the licence for the traffic light information function has expired.

Information on the traffic light information

The traffic light information is available only in a small number of selected cities and not in all areas.

Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic light information display may change abruptly.

If the map material on the navigation system is out of date, the information on the display may be implausible or incorrect, or the data may not be shown at all.

The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.

The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings.

Switching the traffic light information on/off

You can switch the **traffic light information** on/off in the **Driver assist** menu  ⇒ *page 136*.

Lap timer

Introduction

You can use the lap timer to record and evaluate lap times. Up to 99 lap times can be recorded.

Completed laps are listed in the lap statistics. The fastest and slowest times and the average lap time from all completed laps are also shown.

You can call up information from the on-board computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

WARNING

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

Using the lap timer

Calling up the lap timer

The lap timer is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until **Lap times** is displayed.
- ▶ Press the  button. Information is also provided in the head-up display.

Recording lap times

- ▶ To start the lap timer manually, select **Start lap 1**.
- ▶ To start the lap timer automatically when you drive off, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off**.
- ▶ To time another lap after completing a lap, select **New lap**. The next lap time starts running immediately.

When you finish a lap, the lap time is compared with the best lap and the difference is indicated by a  or . Deviations may occur in the differences calculated by the system due to rounding.

Interrupting the lap timer (pause) and displaying split times

- ▶ To pause the lap timer , select **Pause**.
- ▶ To start the lap timer again, select **Resume**.
- ▶ To display a split time, select **Split time**. The split time  appears in the instrument cluster for approximately 10 seconds. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.

Cancelling lap times

- ▶ Select **Cancel lap**. The lap time is deleted and is not included in the statistics.

Resetting the lap timer

- ▶ Select **Reset lap timer**.

Calling up the lap statistics from the lap timer

Important: At least two laps must already have been recorded. ▶

- ▶ Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until **Lap times** is displayed.
- ▶ Press the  /  buttons repeatedly until **Lap statistics** is displayed.
- ▶ Press the  button. The number of laps so far , the fastest lap , the slowest lap  and the average time (avg.) are displayed.
- ▶ To scroll through the list of individual lap times, select **Show all laps**.
- ▶ To reset the lap statistics, select **Reset statistics**.

Parking systems

Parking aids with distance display

Introduction

Parking aids help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇒ *page 134*, *Fig. 72*, you are informed of this by visual and acoustic warnings.

The following parking aids may be available, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

- The **rear parking aid** only provides warnings about obstacles in the area behind the vehicle.
- The **parking aid plus** warns you about obstacles in front of, behind and beside the vehicle.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Parking aid displays and warnings

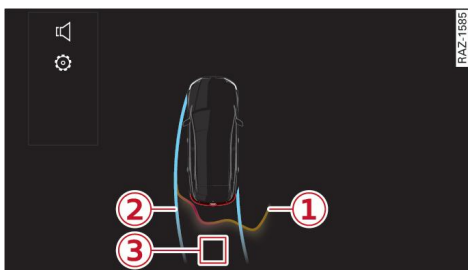


Fig. 100 Centre display: Parking aid with distance display

Displays

- ① The coloured distance display shows you the distance to detected obstacles. The coloured distance display approaches the vehicle as the distance from the vehicle to the obstacle gets shorter. If the distance to the obstacle is too short, the distance display turns red. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing ⇒ .

- ② The light blue lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle.
- ③ The numerical distance display shows the distance to the obstacle as a numerical value. If an obstacle in the vehicle's path is less than 30 cm away, **Stop** is displayed. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the front or rear of the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle¹⁾. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 20 cm from the side of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). As soon as the distance to the obstacle changes, the tone sounds again. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.

- To switch off the acoustic warnings for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press  on the centre display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated.

¹⁾ The distance may vary on vehicles fitted with a towing bracket.

You can adjust the volume of the acoustic warnings and the entertainment fader for parking individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 136*.

Further information

The side zone is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the vehicle off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, the side zone is not shown.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with assisted parking functions: If you use the assisted parking functions to park in short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 20 cm away from the obstacle¹⁾. Stop moving immediately.

Using the parking aid with distance display



Fig. 101 Centre console: Button for park assist systems

Activating/deactivating manually

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h. On some equipment versions, the system can also be activated at higher speeds.

- Press the  button  in the centre console²⁾.

Automatic activation when reversing

- Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The system is activated automatically.

Automatic activation when driving forwards

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under approximately 10 km/h and automatic activation is switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 136*. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h. ►

¹⁾ The distance may vary on vehicles fitted with a towing bracket.

²⁾ Depending on the country and the transmission position selected, it may not be possible to deactivate the system.

Requirements for automatic reactivation

If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:

- The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
- The vehicle is switched off and on again.
- The parking brake is applied and released again.
- Transmission position P is selected and then another position is selected.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

Fault notifications about the parking aids

If  appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If  appears, the parking aid is not available because the vehicle is travelling too fast.

If  is shown on the centre display, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*.

If a pink or black surface is displayed instead of the parking aid in the event of a fault, the system is briefly unavailable.

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notifica-

tion centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available:

- The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.
- The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

Display overview of reversing camera and surround view cameras



Fig. 102 Centre display: Display overview of cameras

The displays depend on the vehicle's equipment and the camera view selected.

- ① The light blue lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle → ①. The lines help you to estimate the space required for parking and manoeuvring.
- ② You should stop reversing at the latest when the white line is bordering on an obstacle.
- ③ Vehicles with surround view cameras: To display/hide the coloured distance display, press  ③¹⁾.
- ④/5 Vehicles with surround view cameras: The coloured distance display shows you the distance to detected obstacles. The coloured distance display approaches the vehicle as the distance from the vehicle to the obstacle gets shorter. The light blue lines are shortened accordingly. If the distance to the obstacle is too short, the distance display turns red. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

In addition to the reversing camera/surround view cameras, the displays and warnings from the parking aid also provide assistance during parking and manoeuvring.

Further information

There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving for-

wards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: When the coloured distance display is shown, the light blue lines are shortened based on the obstacles which are detected. This can cause the lines to be temporarily hidden in the corner areas while you are driving past an obstacle. Hiding the coloured distance display enables the lines to be shown in the original length.

Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines on the camera display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → [page 132](#) to → [page 134](#).

CAUTION

- The light blue orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

¹⁾ Availability depends on the country and the transmission position selected

Camera views of surround view cameras

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to select the following camera views:

Name	Description
Rear view	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
Corner view (rear)	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle. To switch between the panoramic and standard views, press  .
Front view	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
Corner view (front)	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
Overhead view	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇒  .
Front tyres	This view helps you monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.
Rear tyres	This view helps you monitor the distance from the rear tyres to the kerb while you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

 **WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The overhead view display is generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

Activating/deactivating the cameras



Fig. 103 Centre console: Button for park assist systems

Activating/deactivating manually

- Press the  button **1** in the centre console¹⁾.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

On some equipment versions, the system can also be activated at higher speeds.

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the drive system is switched on and reverse gear is selected.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

¹⁾ Depending on the country and the transmission position selected, it may not be possible to deactivate the system.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

Using the surround view cameras



Fig. 104 Centre display: Using the surround view cameras

- ① – The selection points ② are shown temporarily.
- ② Pressing on the selection points or the area around the vehicle will select the corresponding camera view¹⁾. The views can also be selected for selection points which have been hidden again.
- ③ – Switch between panoramic and standard views.
- ④ – Start camera cleaning manually.

The camera views can be controlled via the touch display. In some views, you can move the displayed area or zoom in/out.

Shortcuts

- To switch quickly between the views (e.g. from Corner view (front) to Front view), double tap on the picture of the front/rear camera view or pinch/pull the camera view with two fingers.

Further information

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.

Applies to: vehicles with electric folding exterior mirrors: System limitations may occur when

manually adjusting the external mirrors. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in/out electrically.

Depending on the selected transmission position, the system will switch between specific views automatically. If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

! CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Fault notifications about the cameras

If is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

¹⁾ Availability depends on the country and the transmission position selected.

Calling up the trailer view

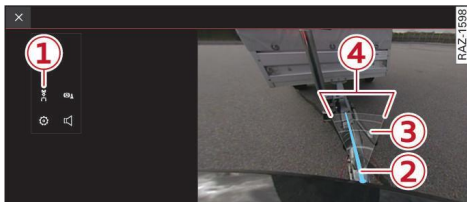


Fig. 105 Centre display: Trailer view

The trailer view helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer.

Calling up the trailer view

Important: The reversing camera or surround view cameras must be activated.

- Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Switch to the **Camera view: rear**.
- Select  ① on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Displays

- ② The blue orientation line indicates the anticipated path of the vehicle's towing bracket.
- ③ You can use the white markings to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 30 cm.
- ④ The width of the area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

Further information

Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines on the camera display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.

There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Activating the reversing camera cleaning function

- With the parking aid active and the rear view selected, select  on the centre display, or
- Move the wiper lever  into the position for cleaning the rear window  ⇒ [page 62](#)¹⁾.

If the washer fluid is empty, the rear lid is open, temperatures are low or the vehicle is travelling at a high speed, the function may not be available.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 132](#) to ⇒ [page 134](#).

¹⁾ Depends on equipment

Rear cross-traffic assist

Introduction

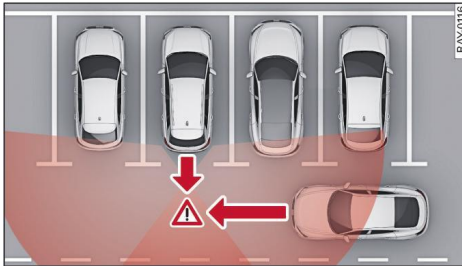


Fig. 106 Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 106. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by the centre display ① and various warnings.

The system is available when driving in reverse gear up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

Using the rear cross-traffic assist



Fig. 107 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

Activating

- Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The system is activated automatically.

Displays, warnings and braking

- **Display:** The arrows ① only appear when the parking aid is activated. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the arrows only appear for camera views **Camera view: rear** and **Camera view: rear corner**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching. The appearance of the display varies, depending on the level of danger.
- **Acoustic warnings:** A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.
- **Active braking intervention:** If you do not react to a warning, a braking intervention may prevent a possible collision or reduce the speed at which the impact takes place. The active braking intervention can be switched off/on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ page 136.

The acoustic warning signals and the active braking intervention only occur while you are reversing.

The areas covered by the sensors ⇒ page 185, Fig. 106 are examples and do not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Deactivating the active braking intervention temporarily

- Press ② on the centre display and confirm the deactivation.

The ② symbol will be displayed.

If the braking intervention function has been deactivated temporarily, it will be activated again automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches a specific speed.

Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

You can switch the rear cross-traffic assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ page 136.

System limits

- The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
- If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer

be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.

- The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.

⇒ *page 135, Fig. 75*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- The rear cross-traffic assist cannot warn you of all approaching objects or very slow or stationary objects. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other objects are approaching very quickly.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

Driver messages about the rear cross-traffic assist

If ,  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle

Assisted parking systems

Options for driving into or out of a parking space

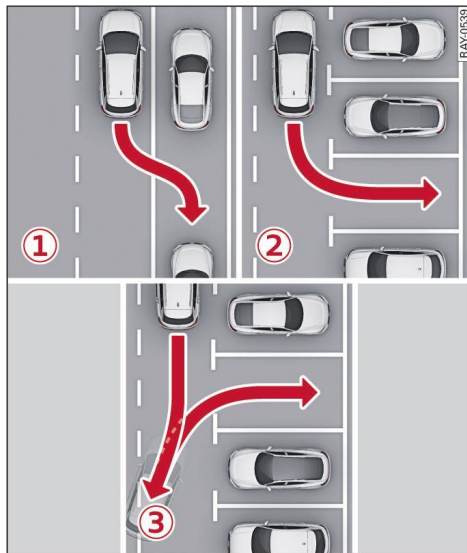


Fig. 108 Overview of parking options

The following parking options may be available to you depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and when the system is activated:

- After activating the parking space search function ① – ③ ⇒ page 187.
- Completing a parking manoeuvre with the assisted parking system ① – ② ⇒ page 188.

Options for driving into a parking space

- ① Reversing into parallel parking spaces if you have already driven past them
- ② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them
- ③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them

Options for driving out of a parking space

- ① Driving out of parallel parking spaces

Finding a parking space for which you can use the assisted parking systems

Introduction

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist plus, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

Once a parking space has been found, the system provides assistance with parking while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids and cameras (depending on the vehicle's equipment).



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.

Activating the parking space search function

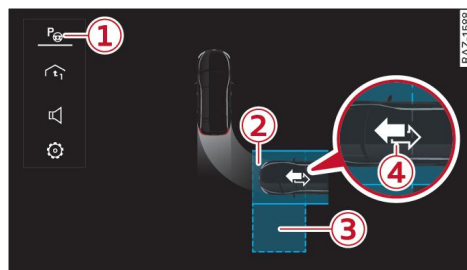


Fig. 109 Centre display: Parking space search activated

- ① Activate the parking space search function
- ② Parking space selected by the system
- ③ Switch between parallel and perpendicular parking
- ④ Switch between driving forwards and reversing into a parking space

Activating the parking space search in advance

- To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is switched on, press **P₀** ►

① on the centre display. The display for the parking space search appears and the  symbol indicates that a parking space search is active.

- ▶ Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.

The parking space search looks for a suitable parking space on both sides of the road simultaneously.

Selecting a parking space and a parking option

When the system finds one or more parking spaces which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, the system displays these spaces ②.

The following symbols may also be shown:

- ▶ **P**: The vehicle is in the ideal starting position and you must brake to a standstill.
- ▶ **P ↑**: The vehicle must be driven further in the direction indicated by the arrow to reach the ideal starting position. Only drive further if there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path.

If the vehicle is stationary and there are further parking options in addition to the selected parking space ②, you can change the selection manually:

- ▶ Select a different suggested parking space or a different parking option ③ on the centre display.
- ▶ Switch between driving forwards and reversing into a parking space ④ if necessary.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

Important: The parking space must be indicated with a **P** on the centre display, the vehicle must be stationary and the brake pedal must be pressed.

- ▶ Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇒ ①.
- ▶ To start the assisted parking manoeuvre, take your hands off the steering wheel and press **[Start]** on the centre display.

Assisted parking ⇒ page 190.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 132 to ⇒ page 134.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.

Completing a parking manoeuvre into a measured space with the assisted parking system

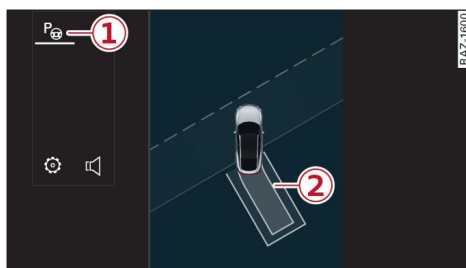


Fig. 110 Centre display: Display showing a parking space into which you have started driving

Important: The parking space must have been measured by the vehicle. This requires you to have driven far enough past the parking space.

If you have started reversing into a parking space and the vehicle is far enough in the parking space, the system can help complete the parking manoeuvre: ▶

- Brake the vehicle to a standstill, if you have not already done so.
- Press the  button in the centre console.
- To activate assisted parking, press **Pa**  on the centre display while the parking aid is switched on. An image representing your parking space  and a corresponding driver message will appear on the centre display.
- To start the assisted parking manoeuvre, take your hands off the steering wheel and press **[Start]** on the centre display.

Assisted parking ⇒ *page 190*.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driving into and out of parking spaces with the park assist plus

Introduction

The park assist plus parks the vehicle after a parking space has been found, and can drive it out of a parallel parking space afterwards. The park assist plus takes over the steering, acceleration, braking and gear changes while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle.

Only use park assist plus when the country-specific regulations permit it. The use of the system may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations. Depending on the country, the system may be deactivated due to a comparison with a country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi.

System limitations

- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
- The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.

- Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.
- Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
- Applies to: vehicles with electric folding exterior mirrors: System limitations may occur when manually adjusting the external mirrors. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in/out electrically.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇒  in *Activating the parking space search function* on *page 188*. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking manoeuvre or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
- The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre. The driver maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

! CAUTION

- Do not use the park assist plus if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
- In certain situations, the park assist plus will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
- Certain conditions in and around the parking space (e.g. objects such as trees, posts or road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow or ice) can cause unexpected results when parking.
- When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.
- The assisted parking systems must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted.

indicates that the park assist plus is active and in control of the vehicle.

- You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.
- In unclear situations, abort the parking manoeuvre by braking the vehicle firmly to a standstill or moving the steering wheel. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.

Display overview

The current driving manoeuvre and the status of the park assist plus are shown on the centre display:

- ① Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Path to be travelled by the vehicle during the current parking manoeuvre.
- ② Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Final position of the current parking manoeuvre/direction change.
- ③  The park assist plus is active.

End of parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully using the park assist plus, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be applied.

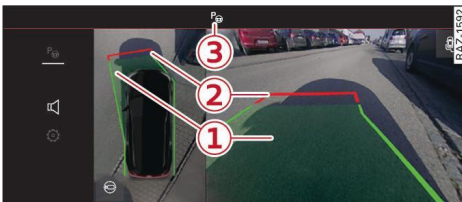
Stopping the park assist plus ⇒ *page 192*.

Further information

Objects which mark the edges of the parking space (e.g. bollards) may be misinterpreted by the system. Take control of the vehicle and perform the parking manoeuvre manually ⇒ *page 192* if the vehicle is not fully inside the parking space or if the vehicle attempts to drive beyond the edge of the parking space.

The display shows an enlarged and distorted view. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately. This applies in particular to objects which are not touching the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear end of ►

Assisted parking



Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras

Fig. 111 Centre display: Image showing park assist plus

Manoeuvring into a parking space

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with and the brake must be applied.

- Take your hands off the steering wheel and press **Start** on the centre display.
- Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇒   on the centre display

a truck. Drive with extra care and watch the road rather than the display if necessary.

Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines and the green area markings on the display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- When the park assist plus is active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
- The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

Driving out of a parking space

Manoeuvring out of a parking space

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist plus to drive out of the parking space.

- ▶ Start the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the  button in the centre console.
- ▶ Press  on the centre display with the parking aid activated.
- ▶ Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▶ Select a direction in which it is possible to leave the space on the centre display ⇒ .
- ▶ Press the button on the centre display to start manoeuvring out of the parking space.

- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇒ .  on the centre display indicates that the park assist plus is active and in control of the vehicle.
- ▶ You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.

The manoeuvre is complete when a message appears indicating that you should take control of the vehicle. Take over the steering ⇒ .

Stopping the park assist plus ⇒ *page 192*.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.
- When the park assist plus is active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
- The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.



CAUTION

- When selecting the direction in which you wish to leave the parking space, pay attention to obstacles and only select a direction where the path is clear.
- Before pressing the accelerator, take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position.

Stopping/cancelling the park assist plus

Stopping the system manually

You can stop the park assist plus at any time by braking the vehicle gently to a standstill. To continue the manoeuvre, press the button on the centre display to continue and release the brake pedal.

Automatic cancellation

The park assist plus is cancelled or stops automatically under the following circumstances:

- If you switch off the system;
- If you press the brake pedal firmly;
- If you press the accelerator;
- If you change the transmission position;
- If you apply the parking brake;
- If you move the steering wheel by hand;
- If the system limit for the maximum number of parking movements has been exceeded;
- If a vehicle door is opened;
- If the time limit has been exceeded;
- If an obstacle is detected;
- If the ESC intervenes.

The  symbol will appear. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

If the parking manoeuvre is cancelled automatically, you must take full control of the vehicle.

In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Please note the messages on the centre display. If applicable, press the button to continue or press  on the centre display.

To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 132* to ⇒ *page 134*.

Driver messages about the park assist plus

If  or  or  lights up, the park assist is unavailable and you must actively apply the brakes yourself if necessary.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

Telephone

Introduction

You can connect your mobile phone via the mobile phone interface and use it conveniently via the MMI. You can connect up to two mobile phones (e.g. your business phone and personal phone). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Functions depend on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system and are not available on all displays.



WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
- Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
- If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- Your mobile phone operates via radio waves. It is therefore not possible to guarantee a connection under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your mobile phone when vital communication is required (e.g. in a medical emergency).
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.
- The Audi assistant must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice may change in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- There is a risk of explosion at filling stations and at fuel and chemical storage and transport facilities. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such areas also include places where fumes (e.g. propane or fuel vapours coming out of vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour,

wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the engine or your mobile phone; make sure to switch your mobile phone off in these places.

- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ *page 27*.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Calling up the telephone

Calling up the telephone on the MMI

- Select: > **Telephone**.

Calling up the telephone on the instrument cluster

- Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until telephone content is displayed.

Connecting a mobile phone

- Connect your mobile phone to the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇒ *page 222*.
- Make sure that the phone function of the mobile phone is set to be used after connecting.

If you granted access to your contacts during the connection procedure, these will be shown automatically on the MMI after connecting successfully.

Depending on the mobile phone, you can use the handsfree system after connecting successfully. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

If a connected mobile phone has a voice control feature, you can control your mobile phone using the external voice control system.

Overview of telephone symbols

Depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system, the following symbols may be available on the MMI:

Symbol	Description
	Dial a number or enter the name of a stored contact.
	Switch between the mobile phones connected to the MMI.
	Switch the audio output for a phone call to the mobile phone or the MMI.
	Send tone sequences (DTMF) during a phone call.
	Have other call options displayed during a phone call.
	Edit a phone number before dialling it.
	Show the call history.
	Send a message template as a text message.
	Call recommendations

Calling up the telephone settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Telephone** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select:  > **Telephone** > .

Calling up the messages menu

You can switch various functions on/off and edit message templates in the **Messages** menu.

- Select:  > **Telephone** >  > **Messages**.

Using the telephone functions

Switching between connected mobile phones

If two mobile phones are connected to the MMI, you can switch between these mobile phones to access the relevant contacts, start calls and select settings.

- Select the following:  > **Telephone** > *Connected telephone 1* or *Connected telephone 2*.
- Press on the desired device name.

Starting a call

Depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system, there may be various different ways in which you can start a call.

Starting a call on the MMI

- To enter a number manually, select:  > **Telephone** > .
- To start a call via the call list/favourites list, select:  > **Telephone** > **Call list/Favourites** > *a contact*.
- To start a call via the contacts list, select:  > **Telephone** > **Contacts** > *a contact* > *the desired phone number*.

Starting a call in the instrument cluster

The call list is displayed in one of the right tabs in the instrument cluster.

- To select an entry from the call list, press the  /  button.
- To confirm the entry, press the  button.

Starting a call via the Audi assistant

You can start a call via the Audi assistant.

Phone calls

You can accept or decline incoming calls on the MMI and with the multi-function steering wheel.

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone used, active calls may be

transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and mobile network service provider used, further call options may be available during a call.

Declining a call via text message

Important: The mobile phone used must support the function and there must be an incoming call.

- Make sure that the function is switched on in the **Messages** menu ⇒ *page 194*.
- Press **Ignore with text message**. The set message template will be sent.

Putting a call on hold via the instrument cluster

Important: A call must be in progress.

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel until **Hold** is displayed.
- Press the  button.

Answering a second call on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress. A second call must be incoming.

The call waiting option must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls while a call is already in progress.

- Press **Answer**. The current call will be put on hold. You will then receive the incoming call.

Switching between calls on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress. A second call must be on hold.

- Press on the call which is currently on hold to switch between the calls.

Starting a conference on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress. A second call must be on hold.

- Press . The phone calls will be merged into a conference.

Up to five active callers can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

Using the contact list

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

All of the contacts stored on your mobile phone are shown in the contact list. If there are too many entries, some contacts may not be displayed on the MMI. The contacts can only be edited on the mobile phone.

In the **Telephone** settings menu, you can set the sort order and download contacts manually ⇒ *page 194*. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can download the contacts. Please note any further notifications on your mobile phone.

When you switch the vehicle on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will update the mobile phone's contacts if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI.

Using call recommendations

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI and the call list must be filled.

If the call recommendation function is switched on in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇒ *page 28*, certain contacts from the call list will be recommended based on the situation.

Calling up a business card

The business card shows you a contact's details. You can call up the business card using the following options:

- Press on a contact from the contact list.
- Press on  in the call list / favourites list.

Using text message functions

You can send text messages to contacts and display incoming text messages on the MMI or have them read out. ►

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

Applies to iPhone: Make sure that access to your text messages is switched on in your mobile phone's Bluetooth settings. You may need to cancel and re-establish the Bluetooth connection to do this.

Sending text messages

- ▶ Press and hold on a contact in the call list/favourites list until the context menu is displayed, or
- ▶ Call up a contact's business card.
- ▶ Press .
- ▶ Select a message template.

Displaying incoming text messages

If the function is switched on in the **Messages** menu ⇒ *page 194*, new messages are displayed in the MMI's notification centre.

Using the phone compartment

Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions via the phone compartment:

- Making and receiving calls using the vehicle aerial
- Wireless mobile phone charging



WARNING

- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Only operate the mobile device via the MMI.

System limits of the phone compartment

In some situations, the functions of the phone compartment may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- More than one mobile phone is in the phone compartment.
- The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
- There are objects between the phone compartment and the mobile phone.

Using the vehicle aerial

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the mobile network coupling aerial connects your mobile phone to the vehicle's external aerial. This reduces the radiation in the vehicle and improves the reception quality.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- ▶ Place your mobile phone with the rear side down on the charging symbol on the holder.

Charging a mobile phone wirelessly

You can charge your mobile phone wirelessly in the phone compartment. The charging performance depends on the mobile phone.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

- ▶ Make sure that the function is switched on in the **Telephone** settings menu ⇒ *page 194*.
- ▶ Place your mobile phone with the rear side down on the charging symbol on the holder.

If the notification for the wireless charging function is switched on in the **Telephone** settings menu ⇒ *page 194*, a notification is displayed on the MMI showing that the mobile phone is being charged wirelessly.

Make sure that there are no cards with an NFC chip between the phone compartment and the mobile phone while the phone is charging, as this could cause irreparable damage to such cards. ►

**WARNING**

An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the phone compartment. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult

a doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the phone compartment's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.

**CAUTION**

The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly – risk of injury! Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the phone compartment carefully.

Troubleshooting options for telephones

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇒ <i>page 222</i> , or Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. Repeat the connection procedure if necessary ⇒ <i>page 222</i> .
After the mobile phone was connected not all/none of the contacts were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone. Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider, the mobile phone used and the operating system.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
Text messages are not displayed on the MMI.	Check if the requirements for using the text message function have been met.
Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Check that the phone compartment's wireless charging function is switched on. Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in phone compartment and that there are no other objects in the phone compartment.

Audi connect

Information on Audi connect

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, Audi connect can connect your vehicle to the internet. The offered apps and services enhance the functions of your vehicle.

Availability, scope, cost and content of the apps, services and technologies depend on the software version installed in your vehicle or on your mobile device. This may also depend on the country, the contract price, the vehicle and the equipment fitted.

The availability of the apps and services depends on the licence period. All apps and services may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.

Some apps and services are provided by third parties or are dependent on third party providers. Audi does not assume any liability for the content and availability.

The availability, scope, provider and price of the apps and services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.

The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.

The myAudi app is required for some services. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on [⇒ page 74](#).



CAUTION

- With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect services are included in the price of Audi connect during the licence period. Some services require additional data volume. Please note that using these services may incur costs. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, there are various options to purchase additional data volume:
 - You use paid data plans for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
 - You connect your vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot. The Wi-Fi hotspot can be provided by your smartphone, for example, and uses the data volume from your SIM card. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
- If you connect your mobile device to your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot to establish an internet connection, your mobile device's SIM card may be used in certain cases as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your mobile device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile device.
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.



WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see [⇒ page 21, Notes on traffic safety](#).
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure

- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Using the internet in the vehicle

Establishing an internet connection in the vehicle using an eSIM card

An internet connection is required to use Audi connect services or apps in the vehicle. An eSIM card is installed in vehicles equipped with Audi connect. You can immediately use the internet via the eSIM card. Follow any instructions given by the system. Some services require additional data volume.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Information on additional data volume

Some services require additional data volume. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, there are various options to purchase additional data volume:

- Using data plans
- Connecting vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

Using data plans

Some services require additional data volume. In some countries, a data plan is offered for this.

Important: In some countries, your myAudi user ID must be registered as the key user in the vehicle.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Connecting the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- ▶ If necessary, activate the “Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)” or “personal hotspot” function on your mobile phone.
- ▶ Select:  > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Wi-Fi**.
- ▶ Switch the **Wi-Fi** function on.
- ▶ Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot in the list of available networks.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The vehicle is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Audi connect services

Setting up Audi connect services and apps

You require a myAudi account to use Audi connect services and apps.

- ▶ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- ▶ Register in the myAudi app to create a myAudi account.
- ▶ Specify a key user.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect services. ▶

Some Audi connect services must be activated via my.audi.com.

Information on Audi connect services

Audi connect services enhance the functions of your vehicle.

You can generally use available Audi connect services directly on the MMI.

Before you use certain Audi connect infotainment services for the first time, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.
- Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle always take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Information on vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the vehicle has been switched off.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.
- Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle always take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot

You can connect up to eight mobile devices (e.g. smartphones) to the vehicle hotspot via Wi-Fi. If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the connected mobile devices can also use the vehicle's internet connection.

Important: The drive system must be switched on. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries.

- ▶ Select:  > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Vehicle hotspot**.
- ▶ Switch the **Vehicle hotspot** function on. The access codes for the vehicle hotspot will be displayed. ▶

- Switch on the Wi-Fi on your mobile device.
- Connect your mobile device to the vehicle's hot-spot.

A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Store

Introduction

After delivery, you can permanently or temporarily add functions or apps to your vehicle via the Audi digital store.

Adding functions and apps

Adding functions in the vehicle

Depending on the country and vehicle's equipment, you can add functions (e.g. functions on demand) via the store in the vehicle or via the myAudi app.

- Select:  > **Store** > **Audi functions.**
- Follow any instructions given by the system.

It may be necessary to switch the vehicle off and on again prior to using a function for the first time.

Adding apps in the vehicle

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you can add apps to the vehicle via the store.

- Select:  > **Store** > **Apps.**
- Follow any instructions given by the system.

Changing the store region

- Select:  > **Store** > .

Information on functions and apps

Certain functions (e.g. functions on demand) are linked to the vehicle and may be permanently or temporarily available in the vehicle depending on the licence, even after the vehicle has been sold. Apps are linked to the respective myAudi account.



WARNING

- Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*
- Only use the store in the vehicle and on your smartphone when the vehicle is stationary. Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the road – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198.*

Displaying the installation history of functions

You can display the installation history in the store.

- Select:  > **Settings** > **Functions on demand.**

Displaying installation history and updates

You can display the installation history and updates in the store.

- Select:  > **Store** > **My applications.**

Emergency call

Emergency call systems

Overview of the emergency call systems

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇒ *page 202*.

- Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.
- Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall)¹⁾. This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇒ *page 204*.

WARNING

- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
- Applies to EU eCall: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
- When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as

those given by the parking aid) may be muted.

Information on using the emergency call systems

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use.

The EU eCall emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The TPS emergency call is only available within the mobile network area covered by the network provider selected by Audi.

Information on using the emergency call systems

If EU eCall is installed in the vehicle, the TPS emergency call can be deactivated in the privacy settings in the vehicle's infotainment system. The legally required EU eCall cannot be deactivated in the vehicle's infotainment system.

EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.

The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions of the emergency call systems

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via onboard sensors ⇒ *page 203, Automatic emergency call*. If the vehicle is equipped with the EU eCall and TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically. ►

¹⁾ "EU eCall" in the following description refers also to emergency call systems required by law in non-EU countries, where the technical implementation corresponds to EU eCall.

The EU eCall can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to [⇒ page 203, Manual emergency call](#).

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically [⇒ page 203](#).

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

Making an emergency call

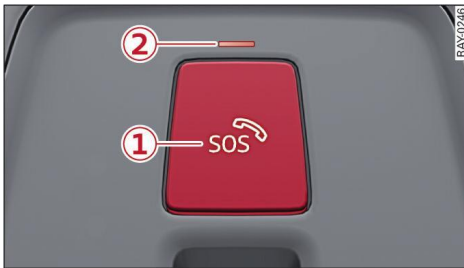


Fig. 112 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- ▶ Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- ▶ Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ▶ If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

If the emergency call is cut off due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Meaning of LEDs

- **Green** – The emergency call function is available in the vehicle.
- **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function [⇒ page 204](#).
- **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to [⇒ page 203, Meaning of LEDs](#) and [⇒ page 204, Driver messages about the emergency call systems](#).

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the onboard emergency call system to be unavailable, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to [⇒ page 203, Meaning of LEDs](#) and [⇒ page 204, Driver messages about the emergency call systems](#).

Sending phone number in an emergency call

In the event of an emergency call, your phone number¹⁾ can be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

- ▶ Select: > **Settings** > **Connection** > **Connection manager** > .
- ▶ Switch the function **Send phone number in an emergency call** on.

The function must be switched on individually for each connected mobile phone.

¹⁾ We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all phones/SIM cards. As a result, it may not always be possible to read out the phone number and no indication of the incompatibility will be given.

Driver messages about the emergency call systems

 **Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop**

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

 **Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance

Introduction

An online roadside assistance call ¹⁾ can consist of a voice call and data transmission. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Using the online roadside assistance call

Starting an online roadside assistance call

- Press the  button at the front of the headliner. The red LED in the  button will light up.
- Follow the system's instructions to start an online roadside assistance call. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.

If the online roadside assistance call is cut off due to a poor connection, the call must be started again.

Cancelling an online roadside assistance call

- Press the  button at the front of the headliner.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred.

- Follow the system instructions to call Audi incident assistance or make an emergency call.

Information on data processing for the European Union

Information on the EU eCall

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Subparagraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location credibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose



¹⁾ The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and never more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

AUDI AG
DSGVO-Anfrage
Auto-Union-Straße 1
85057 Ingolstadt
GERMANY

Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit

Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS emergency call ⇒ *page 202*.

Description of the operation and the functionalities of the online roadside assistance call ⇒ *page 204*.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

The TPS emergency call system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

- Modalities ⇒ *page 205*
- You can read information on data protection in the MMI of your vehicle. Select:  > **Legal** > **Privacy**.

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right ►

Emergency call

to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. The TPS emergency call can be deactivated in the privacy settings in your vehicle's infotainment system.

Navigation

Introduction

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

Functions and services depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays.



WARNING

- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter *⇒ page 21*.
- The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs *⇒* *in Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Navigation system limits

The navigation system is subject to system limits. In certain situations, the navigation may be temporarily restricted.

- Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
- Route guidance is subject to constant change, such as new roads, roadworks, road closures, changes to street names and house numbers. Outdated navigation data may result in errors or inaccuracies during route guidance.

Calling up the navigation menu

Calling up the navigation function on the MMI

► Select:  > **Navigation**.

Calling up the navigation function in the instrument cluster

► Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until navigation content is displayed.

Overview of navigation symbols

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be available in the MMI:

Symbol	Description
	Search for destination and select for route guidance.
	Specify/edit home/business address
	Last destinations.
	Destination information (e.g. driving time and distance to destination) or destination marker on the map.
	Stop route guidance.
	Switch navigation cues on/off. You can adjust the navigation cues and volume of spoken cues in the Navigation settings menu <i>⇒ page 208</i> . You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played <i>⇒ page 24</i> .
	Adjusting map orientation: You can switch between a 2D driving position map, 2D north position map and 3D driving position map.
	Zoom in/out on map.
 / AUTO / M	Set map scale: You can switch between the overview map, automatic zoom and manual zoom.

Symbol	Description
	Centre map to current vehicle position.
	Current vehicle position.

Calling up the navigation settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Navigation** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select:  > **Navigation** > .

Calling up the map content menu

You can switch content displayed in the map on/off in the **Map content** menu.

- Select:  > **Navigation** >  > **Map content**.

Entering a destination

Searching and selecting a destination in the MMI

The search allows you to search for your desired destination and select it for route guidance. The navigation system always searches for the fastest route.

Calling up the search function

- Select:  > **Navigation** > .

Search options

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle and the country, as well as the registered user, the following options can be available:

- Search: Search for one or multiple terms in the entry field or using the Audi assistant.
- Internet search: Search for a destination using a search engine. Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.
- Online points of interest: Search for a point of interest, such as filling stations, parking spaces and restaurants. To use other categories, press ...

Route guidance begins after you have selected the desired destination.

Information on entering a destination

The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

 **CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Selecting a destination in the instrument cluster

Important: Route guidance must not be active.

The navigation is displayed in one of the right tabs in the instrument cluster.

- To select a destination from the list of last destinations, press the  /  button.
- To confirm a destination, press the  button.

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Using search filters for POIs

Depending on the point of interest category, you can use filters when searching for a destination.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

- Select:  > **Navigation** >  > *a point of interest category (e.g. parking)* > **Filter**.
- Select your desired filters. The corresponding POIs will be displayed on the map.
- Select the destination on the map to navigate to a POI.

 **CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection

costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Setting a destination from the map

You can set a point from the map or location from the map (e.g. POI) as a destination.

- Press on a point or location on the map (e.g. .

The destination details will be displayed. You can select the destination for route guidance.

Show destination details

You can display additional information on a destination. You can call up destination details using the following options:

- Press on  in the search.
- Press on a point or location on the map (e.g. .

Depending on the selected destination, the following options may be available in the destination details view:

- Store as favourite/delete favourite
- Start route guidance
- Add as a stopover
- Display nearby points of interest

Selecting contacts as a destination

You can select the address of a contact in your mobile telephone as a destination.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI. An address must be available for a contact.

- Call up a contact's business card.
- Press on the stored address to set the address in the search.
- Press on the address in the search to start route guidance.

Using myAudi navigation

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your last destinations and favourites are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇒ *page 30*.

Important: The MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the internet. You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You are logged in to the same myAudi account in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

myAudi navigation functions:

- You can send destinations to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
- Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Using functions while route guidance is active

Using destination information

Route guidance begins after you have selected a destination. The destination information  calculated by the MMI is displayed and contains the driving time and distance to the destination, as well as the arrival time at the destination.

- Press on the destination information  to display route details.

Using the route monitor

The route monitor displays information on things along the route. Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, traffic information, filling ►

stations, points of interest, alternative routes and country borders can be displayed.

- ▶ Press  to display the route monitor.
- ▶ Press on information in the route monitor to call up details.
- ▶ Press  to hide the route monitor. The map is shown in full scale.

Editing route

You can edit your current route by adding or deleting stopovers or changing the destination.

Deleting/adding a stopover

The following options are available:

- Enter a destination via the search function.
- Set a destination from the map.
- Add/delete a destination via destination information.
- Add/delete a destination via **Edit route** in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*.

Adding a stopover updates the destination information.

Replacing a destination

You can replace the previous destination by entering a new destination and pressing **Replace destination**. Route guidance will be updated.

Setting route criteria

You can set the criteria to be considered when calculating a route in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*.

Using the manoeuvre display

If the manoeuvre display is switched on in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*, upcoming driving manoeuvres (e.g. turning off, changing lanes) are displayed on the map.

- ▶ Press on the manoeuvre display to repeat the navigation cue.

Using alternative routes

If alternative routes are switched on in the **Map contents** menu ⇒ *page 208*, two alternative routes will be displayed on the map in addition to the calculated route. The time difference to the currently selected route will be displayed for the alternative routes.

- ▶ Press on a route on the map. The corresponding distance to the destinations, as well as the calculated arrival times are displayed in the information window on the respective routes. Toll fees are shown in some countries.
- ▶ Select your preferred route and press **Start**. Route guidance will be updated.

Using automatic route updates

The MMI can receive traffic information and plan a better route, as well as calculate the time saved compared to the current route.

If automatic route updates are switched on in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*, the better route is automatically used if it is available. The MMI will not use a better route if the calculated route does not save time compared to the current route guidance.

Stopping route guidance

- ▶ Press  to stop active route guidance.

Route guidance will be stopped. The destination and any stopovers will be stored individually as last destinations.

Operating the map

You can optimise the navigation map view by moving it using your fingers.

- Move map: Swipe in the desired direction with one finger.
- Quickly move map: Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.
- Gradually zoom in on map: Double tap the map with your finger.

- Zoom in on map: Place two fingers on the area and move them apart or double-tap on the map with one finger, press and hold your finger on the map and swipe down with your finger.
- Gradually zoom out on map: Double-tap the map with two fingers.
- Zoom out on map: Place two fingers on the area and move them together or double-tap on the map with one finger, press and hold your finger on the map and swipe up with your finger.
- Turn map: Turn the map with two fingers.
- Tilt map: Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Using map functions

Setting the map colours

You can set the map colours in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*. If the map colour is set to **Auto**, the colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).

Calling up country information

You can switch the display of country information, such as permitted top speeds on the motorway, on/off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*.

Using the satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images. For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

You can switch the satellite map on/off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*.

The satellite map is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds. Depending on the internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map is activated.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ *in Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Using traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If traffic information is available on your route, it is displayed on the map or in the route monitor.

- Press on the corresponding traffic information to display details.

Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.

Traffic obstructions on your route are displayed using coloured warning symbols. Traffic obstructions that are not on your route are greyed out. All traffic obstructions are highlighted in colour on the map when route guidance is not active.

Showing traffic flow

You can switch flow of traffic on/off in the **Map content** menu ⇒ *page 208*.

Traffic flow is displayed in colour on the map:

- **Green:** no obstructions
- **Orange:** slow-moving traffic
- **Red:** traffic jams/obstructions



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ *in Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Performing an online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system directly in the vehicle.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

When starting the navigation for the first time, a notification is displayed in which you can agree to automatic map updates. You can also switch automatic updates for the navigation database

on/off later in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇒ *page 208*.

The MMI will automatically perform the online map update in the background as soon as new map material is available.

 **CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  *in Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Troubleshooting for the navigation

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
The entered destination cannot be found.	If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check that you have spelt the search term correctly. Use different search options. Search for the destination on the map. Check whether automatic updates are enabled in the Navigation settings menu ⇒ <i>page 208</i> .
Last destinations are not shown.	No last destinations are saved if you are not logged into the vehicle or are logged in as a guest user. Log in to the vehicle as a user to save entered destinations and display them in the list of last destinations.

Radio

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM, DAB (digital radio) and HD radio.

The DAB waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+, where available.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays or for all sources.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Operating the radio

Calling up the radio on the MMI

► Select: > **Radio**.

Calling up the radio on the instrument cluster

► Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until radio content is displayed.

Adjusting the radio station on the MMI

► Select: > **Radio** > *a station list (e.g. Favourites)* > *a station*.
 ► To set a frequency, enter it in the search.

Adjusting the radio station in the instrument cluster

The radio is displayed in one of the right tabs in the instrument cluster.

► To select a station, press the / button.
 ► To confirm the station, press the button.

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Calling up search

You can search for station names, frequencies¹⁾ or types of programme (e.g. news), for example.

► Select: > **Radio** > .

Overview of radio symbols

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be available in the MMI:

Symbol	Description
	Call up the current station list.
	Call up the source menu.
	The system is attempting to receive the station.
	The station cannot be received.

Calling up the radio settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Radio** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Select: > **Radio** > .

Using radio functions

Using HD radio

If **Radio** is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*, FM/AM stations that can be received via digital radio are labelled with the HD radio technology symbol and are received as digital radio. If the reception quality drops, the radio automatically switches to the analogue FM/AM station, depending on availability.

Digital HD radio stations may also include multiple additional audio programmes. If you leave the waveband, additional audio programmes which can no longer be received are muted.

¹⁾ This function is not available for the DAB waveband.

Using automatic music recognition

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries.

If automatic music recognition is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*, additional information, such as album cover, artist or title can be displayed, depending on availability.

You can change the view in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*.

You can call up the provider information in the **Radio** settings menu to view legal information on the used music recognition software ⇒ *page 213*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Using online station tracking

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries.

If automatic station tracking is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*, the radio tuner may switch to an alternative station on the internet if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband.

Displaying in the station list

When automatic station tracking is switched on, stations that provide an alternative internet station are marked with the  or  symbols.

Displaying in the playback view

When automatic station tracking is switched on, the following applies in the playback view: The greyed-out  symbol indicates stations which can switch to an alternative internet station. The  symbol denotes stations which are currently being received via the internet.

Setting the bit rate

You can adjust the preferred bit rate for online station tracking in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*. This enables you to increase playback quality or reduce data usage.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Using DAB service following

If service following between related DAB stations is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

Using radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

Calling up the radio text

► Select:  > **Radio** > *a waveband (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > ...

Using announcements and messages

You can cancel announcements while they are being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial.

You can switch the announcements and messages on/off in the **Radio** settings menu ⇒ *page 213*.

The following functions may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Traffic announcements

If traffic announcements are switched on, traffic announcements from various wavebands are received subject to availability. ►

DAB announcements

If DAB announcements are switched on, additional information, such as news or weather information, can be received.

Alarm messages

If alarm messages are switched on, alarm messages may be displayed in the notification centre.

Media

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you have multiple options to play media files and operate them via the MMI.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays or for all sources.



WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.
- Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect* on page 198.

Information on the use of mobile devices and media

Due to incompatibility, some storage media and media files may not be recognised or cannot be used, or can only be used with limited functionality under certain circumstances.

Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media on storage media.

Use the local media centre on the respective mobile device if playlists are incorrectly displayed on the MMI.

Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be

connected via a USB adapter to the USB ports; this could cause performance issues.

It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices that are not compatible with the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.

USB hubs are not supported.

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

Video playback via the USB ports is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).

For safety reasons, the video picture on the centre display is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

Audi recommends that your mobile devices use the latest software. Please observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of your mobile device.

Connecting mobile devices and media

Preparing to use media via Bluetooth

- Connect your mobile device to the Bluetooth audio player function of the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇒ *page 222*.
- Make sure that the device is set to be used as a Bluetooth audio player after connecting.

Multiple mobile devices can be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth; however, only one mobile device can be active as a Bluetooth audio player.

Please note the volume control on your mobile device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.

Preparing to use media via Bluetooth

- Connect your mobile device to the MMI using the USB interface  in the centre console. ►

- Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your mobile device.

If you denied access to your files and media when connecting your mobile device for the first time, you can allow access later in the **Settings** menu ⇒ *page 222*.

Operating media

Calling up media on the MMI

- Select:  > *a connected mobile device*.

Calling up media in the instrument cluster

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel until media content is displayed.

Changing the media source on the MMI

You can switch the media source in the media player.

- Select:  > *a source*.

Selecting a media file in the instrument cluster

The media is displayed in one of the right tabs in the instrument cluster.

- To select a media file, press the  /  button.
- To confirm a media file, press .

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Calling up the search

- To search for tracks and artists across sources, for example, press  in the media player.

Calling up a playlist

- To display the playlist, press  in the playlist view.

Calling up the media settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Media** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select:  > *a connected mobile device* > .

Using media functions

Using additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries.

If additional online data is switched on in the **Media** settings menu ⇒ *page 217*, additional information, such as album cover, artist or track, can be displayed, depending on availability.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Setting the picture format

You can set the picture format for video playback in the **Media** settings menu ⇒ *page 217*. If the picture is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus, use a different picture format.

Information on supported media and file formats

Depending on the vehicle equipment and software version, media and files with the following properties are supported:

File systems

- USB mass storage devices: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS

Metadata

- Album covers: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px.
Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote.

Playlists

- .m3u; .pls; .wpl

Number of files

- USB mass storage device: max. 50000 files per medium. A maximum of 200 files are displayed per folder.

Audio files up to 48 kHz sampling frequency

- .mp3; .wav; .m4a; .flac;
.3gp; .mp4; .aac; .mkv; .ogg; .webm

Video files up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps

- .mp4; .3gp; .mkv; .webm

Information on media and file formats

Supported media and file formats can be changed or extended, e.g. through software updates from Audi or a third party.

Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.

The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

Some MTP player functions, such as the rating of tracks, may be restricted.

Troubleshooting for media

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
The mobile device is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low. First charge the device to a sufficient level.
Error with audio playback from a mobile device connected via USB.	The device is set to be used as a Bluetooth audio player. Switch this function off ⇒ <i>page 222</i> if you are not using the mobile device as a Bluetooth audio player.
Audio playback not possible from a mobile device connected via USB.	Make sure that the USB mode <i>MTP</i> is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Error in displaying track and audio playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	If an app used for music playback from a third party is open, it may result in problems. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your mobile device (e.g. smartphone).
Long loading times for media files on a mobile device.	The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a mobile device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a mobile device (e.g. USB stick) which only contains media files and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).
Additional information and album covers are not displayed.	If no additional information is available on the respective mobile device, switch on additional online data in the Media settings menu ⇒ <i>page 217</i> . Nevertheless, some additional information may still not be displayed in some cases.
Error when trying to operate mobile devices via the MMI.	Errors on mobile devices can also have an impact on the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
Search does not work.	Not every media source supports the search function. Use a media source that supports the search function.

Interior entertainment

Introduction

The MMI has certain functions that you can use to customise the interior and for entertainment.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays.

Using the themes function

This function enables you to use themes to customise the appearance of the infotainment system.

Installing the themes app

- ▶ Select:  > **Themes**.
- ▶ Follow the system's instructions to complete the setup of the pre-installed app.

Using the themes preview

You can view a time-limited preview of a theme.

- ▶ Select:  > **Themes** >  > *a theme*.
- ▶ Press **Preview**.

Downloading a theme

To use a theme permanently, you must download the theme.

Important: You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You must have added your vehicle in the myAudi app. You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

- ▶ Open the myAudi app on your smartphone and download the desired theme, or
- ▶ Select:  > **Themes** >  > *a theme*.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Selecting a theme

- ▶ To activate a downloaded theme, select:  > **Themes** > *a theme*.
- ▶ To restore the factory appearance, select:  > **Themes** > **No theme**.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Using the experiences function¹⁾

This function enables you to customise the atmosphere in your vehicle. It uses different vehicle functions, such as the air conditioning and music playback, and combines them in an in-car experience to create a certain atmosphere.

- ▶ To activate an experience, select:  > **Experiences** > *an experience*.
- ▶ To customise an experience, press  or .
- ▶ To deactivate an experience, press **Cancel**. The settings of the used vehicle functions will be reset to the previous settings.



WARNING

The driver must not allow the experiences function to distract their attention from the road – risk of accident!

¹⁾ The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

Smartphone interface

Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can connect your smartphone wirelessly to the MMI or also via cable and the smartphone interface. You can operate certain content and functions of your smartphone in an optimised format via the MMI.

If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect* on page 198.

Connecting a smartphone

System limits of the smartphone interface

The smartphone interface is subject to system limits. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. The availability or the functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:

- The brand of your smartphone
- The operating system version of your smartphone
- The software version of the app in use
- The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection

- Your mobile network/service provider
- The individual settings on your smartphone

Connecting a smartphone by cable

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 8.0 or higher.

- ▶ Connect your smartphone to the smartphone interface using the USB interface  in the centre console. Use a certified USB-C cable or certified adapter.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your smartphone.

Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 11 or higher.

- ▶ To connect your smartphone wirelessly, switch on the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi functions on your smartphone.
- ▶ Connect your smartphone to the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇒ page 222.
- ▶ Make sure that Apple CarPlay or Android Auto (depending on your smartphone) is set to use the device after connecting.

Using Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

Important: Your smartphone must be connected to the MMI wirelessly or with a cable.

- ▶ To use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, open the app in the app overview.

Troubleshooting for the smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ►

Subject	Advice
Smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the charge level of your smartphone.
	Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone and is active. Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.
Wired connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	Check that the USB-C cable/USB adapter is not damaged and is correctly connected to your smartphone and the USB interface in the front centre console. Check that Apple CarPlay/Android Auto is set in the Connection manager menu ⇒ <i>page 222</i> .
Wireless connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	Apple CarPlay: Call up the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle.
	Android Auto: Call up the Android Auto app and Bluetooth settings on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle.
	Open the Connection manager menu ⇒ <i>page 222</i> . Delete your smartphone from the list of known devices. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI. Restart your smartphone.
	Call up the Wi-Fi settings on your smartphone. Check whether your smartphone has connected to the vehicle hotspot.

Further settings

Opening the settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Settings** menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select:  > **Settings**.

System settings

Changing the system settings and language

You can adjust the system settings in the **Settings** menu ⇒ *page 222*.

Date and time

You can adjust the date and time settings, such as the date format and time zone.

Units

You can adjust the units that are used to display technical values such as speed or temperature.

Language and keyboard

You can change the language and the keyboard layout.

Sound settings

You can adjust the sound in the **Settings** menu ⇒ *page 222*.

Depending on the user, the volume when turning on the MMI is set to the last setting or an automatically specified value.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Calling up the Bluetooth settings

You can switch the MMI's Bluetooth function on/off and adjust the settings in the **Bluetooth** menu.

- Select:  > **Settings** > **Connection** > **Bluetooth**.

The *Vehicle name* for the Bluetooth connection and vehicle hotspot is automatically matched if changes are made.

Restoring the factory settings

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

You can reset the system to the factory settings in the **Settings** menu ⇒ *page 222*.

- Follow the instructions given by the system.

The system will be reset to the factory settings and restarted. This can take some time. Not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

Connection manager

Calling up the connection manager menu

You can connect your mobile devices with the MMI and adjust settings for already known devices in the **Connection manager** menu.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Select:  > **Settings** > **Connection** > **Connection manager**, or
- Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press **Connection manager**.

Connecting a mobile device via Bluetooth

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇒ *page 222*. The Bluetooth function on your mobile device is switched on.

- Make sure that the Bluetooth settings are open on your mobile device. Ensure your mobile device is visible. ►

- Press **Add new device** to connect your mobile device. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile device.
- Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 222*.

Both the displayed mobile devices, as well as the automatic reconnection are independent from the user logged in to the vehicle.

There are different reasons as to why the Bluetooth connection between your mobile device and the MMI can fail. Check the following conditions and, if necessary, try connecting the device again.

- The Bluetooth menu must be open in the foreground on your mobile device during the connection procedure.
- Your mobile device is not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.
- Your mobile device is within range of the MMI.
- The connection request PIN on your mobile device is the same as on the MMI and has been confirmed.

You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.

Managing mobile devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 222*.

Calling up device options

- Press .

Setting device use

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment and your mobile device, you can adjust the fol-

lowing settings for your mobile devices via the symbols in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 222* and the device options:

- Using as a mobile phone
- Using as a Bluetooth audio player
- Using Apple CarPlay/Android Auto
- Setting as preferred device
- Sending phone number in an emergency call
- Disconnecting a mobile device
- Deleting a mobile device

Software update

Introduction

You can update the software in your vehicle.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Performing software updates¹⁾
- Performing online map updates
- Performing software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.

Checking the software version in your vehicle

You can check the software version installed in your vehicle in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 222*.

The software version of your vehicle is displayed under **Installed software version**.

Performing a software update¹⁾

You can update the software directly in the vehicle via a software update.

Downloading a software update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

Software updates are downloaded automatically without prior notification. If necessary, the download is resumed automatically when the vehicle is switched back on. A notification is shown ►

¹⁾ The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

on the centre display when the download is complete.

Installing a software update

Important: A software update notification must be shown on the centre display. The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Press on the notification, or
- To call up the software update, select:  > **Settings**.
- Press on the desired software update and follow the instructions given by the system.
- Please note that certain conditions may need to be met before installing a software update. These conditions are shown on the centre display.
- To start the software update, leave the vehicle and lock it.

The MMI will start the installation. The vehicle functions are restricted while the software update is being installed.

A notification is shown on the centre display when the software update is complete. You can have information on the installed software displayed.

A notification is shown on the centre display if the software update fails. Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

- To ensure that the update is carried out correctly, it is not possible to switch the vehicle on while the update is installing.
- In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *Information on Audi connect on page 198*.

Driver messages about the software update

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle cannot be driven. See owner's manual**

An error occurred while installing the software update. The vehicle is not ready to drive. Contact a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

 **Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle functions limited. See owner's manual**

An error occurred while installing the software update. The vehicle is ready to drive, however, certain vehicle functions may not be available. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Legal information

Legal information on software licences

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Legal information on vehicle software

You can display the vehicle's software and version information in the **Settings** menu ⇒ *page 222*.

Legal information on apps

You can display various legal information or software and licence information for apps. The content and availability depend on the respective app.

- To call up the legal information on an app, select:  > *an app* > .

Legal information on the system

You can display various legal information or software and licence information on the system.

- To call up legal information on the system, select:  > **Settings**.
- To call up additional legal information, select:  > **Legal**.

Legal information on the smartphone interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇒ *page 222*.

- Press .
- Press  next to **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

Legal information on the instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel until the legal information is displayed.

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Identification of fuels¹⁾

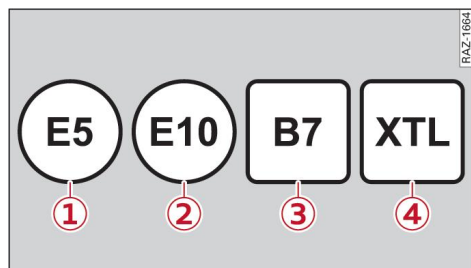


Fig. 113 Fuel tank flap sticker: Identification of fuels (examples)

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, the individual symbols may be found on the vehicle's fuel tank flap. In some countries, you will also find the information on the fuel pumps. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Only fill the tank with the fuel types shown on the vehicle's fuel tank flap.

- ① **Petrol** with ethanol: “E” stands for **ethanol**. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, “E5” means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
- ② **Petrol** with ethanol: “E” stands for **ethanol**. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, “E10” means that the fuel contains a maximum of 10% ethanol.
- ③ **Diesel** with biodiesel: “B” stands for **biodiesel**. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, “B7” means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
- ④ **Diesel**: “XTL” stands for paraffinic diesel fuel.

Petrol grade

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap (example):

95 RON/ROZ or min. 91 RON/ROZ

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

min. 95 RON/ROZ

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

98 RON/ROZ or min. 95 RON/ROZ

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible. ►

¹⁾ May vary in different countries.

Information on petrol grade

You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.



CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E30 – E100). This will damage the fuel system.
- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 – M100). Damage will occur to the fuel system and the engine.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your

vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.



CAUTION

- Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.

Paraffinic diesel fuel¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles suitable for paraffinic diesel fuel

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

You can use **sulphur-free paraffinic diesel fuel** that complies with the EN 15940 standard if the “XTL” symbol is on the sticker inside your vehicle’s tank flap. You must not use this fuel if the symbol is not on the sticker.

Please also refer to the description of diesel fuel ⇨ *page 227*.

Filling the tank

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp  lights up and a corresponding message appears, you should add fuel to the vehicle’s tank.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. ►

¹⁾ This fuel is available in certain countries only.

Vehicle refuelled. Reset km/miles now?

Select **Yes** if you want to reset the trip recorder to zero.

The display of this message depends on the amount of fuel in the tank and the amount of fuel added.

Filling the fuel tank



Fig. 114 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening fuel tank flap



Fig. 115 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system. The fuel tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.

- ▶ If necessary, unlock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to open it ⇒ Fig. 114.
- ▶ Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇒ Fig. 115.
- ▶ Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- ▶ Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full ⇒ ⚠.

- ▶ When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- ▶ Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇒ page 226.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇒ page 288. The maximum possible amount of fuel that can be added depends on the amount remaining in the tank.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp ¹⁾ will light up.

Information on vehicles with diesel engine

- Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system²⁾. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.
- If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
- The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel fuel slowly.

WARNING

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
- The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.

¹⁾ Depends on engine and country

²⁾ Depending on country

- Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling. Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
- The auxiliary heating* must be switched off when refuelling.
- Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.
- The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank. Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm, potentially at a later point in time. This can cause explosion, fire and serious or fatal injuries.

WARNING

- Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
 - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
 - When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.

- Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
- Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.

CAUTION

- If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straight away to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
- **Vehicles with diesel engine:** When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

For the sake of the environment

- Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.
- Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

Having the tank flap released manually

- If you cannot open the tank flap, seek professional assistance.
- Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle. AdBlue consumption is normally between 1.0 ltr. – 2.5 ltr./1000 km. In individual cases, the consumption may be different as a result of how the vehicle is driven along with the operating and ambient temperature.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop ⇒ *page 231*.

Checking range

The AdBlue consumption depends on the ambient and operating temperature and on how the vehicle is driven. The estimated remaining range can be viewed in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *page 17, Instrument cluster controls* and ① ⇒ *page 17, Fig. 2*.

Legal information

- It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
- Audi has approved this vehicle for use only with AdBlue corresponding to ISO-22241-1, for which the Certificate of Conformity for this type of vehicle has been issued.

- It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue which corresponds to ISO-22241-1.
- If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.
- The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.

Information on AdBlue

- The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇒ *page 230, Low AdBlue level*. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
- Please follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for storage and use.
- Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
- The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

Driver messages about AdBlue/DEF

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display.

 **Please refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF the next time you refuel. Range x km**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

 **Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. No re-start in x km. See owner's manual**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the on-board computer.

 **Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual**

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇒ *page 231*, *Before refilling AdBlue*.

Filling the wrong fluid / system fault

If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

 **Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

 **AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

 **AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or

with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

Before refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction



Fig. 116 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity on your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇒ *page 288*.

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the tank flap ⇒ *page 228*.
- ▶ Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇒ *Fig. 116*.
- ▶ Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇒ *page 232*, canister ⇒ *page 232* or bottle ⇒ *page 233*.



WARNING

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

! CAUTION

- Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.
- AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid.

Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

- ▶ Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇒  *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 232.*
- ▶ Put the tank cap back on ⇒ *page 233, After refilling AdBlue.*

! CAUTION

- The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇒  *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 232.*
- Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.

- You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇒  *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 232.*

Refilling AdBlue from a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

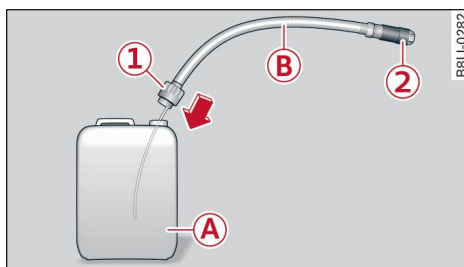


Fig. 117 Canister with screw-on hose

Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle. Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

- ▶ Take the cap off the refill canister ⇒  *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 231,* ⇒  *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 232.*
- ▶ Screw the end of the hose  clockwise onto the opening on the canister .
- ▶ Remove the cap  from the other end of the hose .
- ▶ Fit the end of the hose  onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
- ▶ Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- ▶ Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it.
- ▶ Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ *page 233, After refilling AdBlue.*

! CAUTION

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops. Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

- ▶ Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 231*, ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 232*.
- ▶ Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
- ▶ To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- ▶ Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
- ▶ Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ *page 233, After refilling AdBlue*.



CAUTION

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

After refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

Closing the filler neck

- ▶ Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 231*, ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 232*.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

After refilling

The vehicle must be driven so that the system can detect the AdBlue which has been added. This process can take several minutes.

- ▶ If the AdBlue tank had run dry and a range of 0 km was shown on the display, switch on the ignition for approx. 30 seconds before starting the engine.

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect

AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

Emission control system

General information



WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

- Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
- Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
- Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system – risk of fire!

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 233, General information*.

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 233, General information*.

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not ▶

be able to operate, e.g. if the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter will become obstructed with soot and a driver message will appear. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Driver messages:

 **Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Or

 **Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Different regeneration procedures are required, depending on the type of engine (petrol or diesel).

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇒ .

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- ▶ Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇒ .
- ▶ Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- ▶ Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time.

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by

driving at a constant speed is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇒ .

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- ▶ Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h ⇒ . As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- ▶ Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Information on the particulate filter

As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.

Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the indicator lamp requesting you to refuel the vehicle

 also appears in the instrument cluster during the regeneration trip, the particulate filter regeneration process may be interrupted. Drive to a filling station and then resume the regeneration trip after refuelling the vehicle.

To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

WARNING

It is essential, when regenerating the particulate filter, that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

CAUTION

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or



driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.

Emission control system

If the indicator lamp  lights up or flashes, malfunctions have occurred which are relevant for emissions. These malfunctions may reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter, for example. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly
⇒ page 228¹⁾.

Engine compartment

Safety information on the engine compartment

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the motor compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area ⇒ .

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Hot components! Rotating parts!
	Hot surfaces. The heat generated during operation can lead to hot surfaces on individual components. Do not touch components – risk of burns!
	Fan can switch on at any time!

	High voltage! Switch off the engine before touching any part of ignition system!
	Hot coolant – risk of scalding!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

WARNING

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

- Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
- Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
- If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

WARNING

Note the following information when working on the engine compartment:

- Switch the vehicle off.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids in the engine compartment.
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system. Close the positive battery terminal cover, for example, immediately after use.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.

¹⁾ Depends on engine and country

- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
- Protect your face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not expose yourself to chemical substances for any longer than necessary. For example, electrolytic fluids can irritate the skin.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Failure to do so will cause serious malfunctions or damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

Opening/closing the bonnet



Fig. 118 Footwell: Release lever



Fig. 119 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

- ▶ With the door open, pull the lever ¹⁾ under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 118.
- ▶ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇒ .
- ▶ Press the release lever ⇒ Fig. 119 in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the arrester hooks.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- ▶ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ▶ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. ⇒ .

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it

¹⁾ Symbol  not available in all countries.

is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.

- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving,

stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

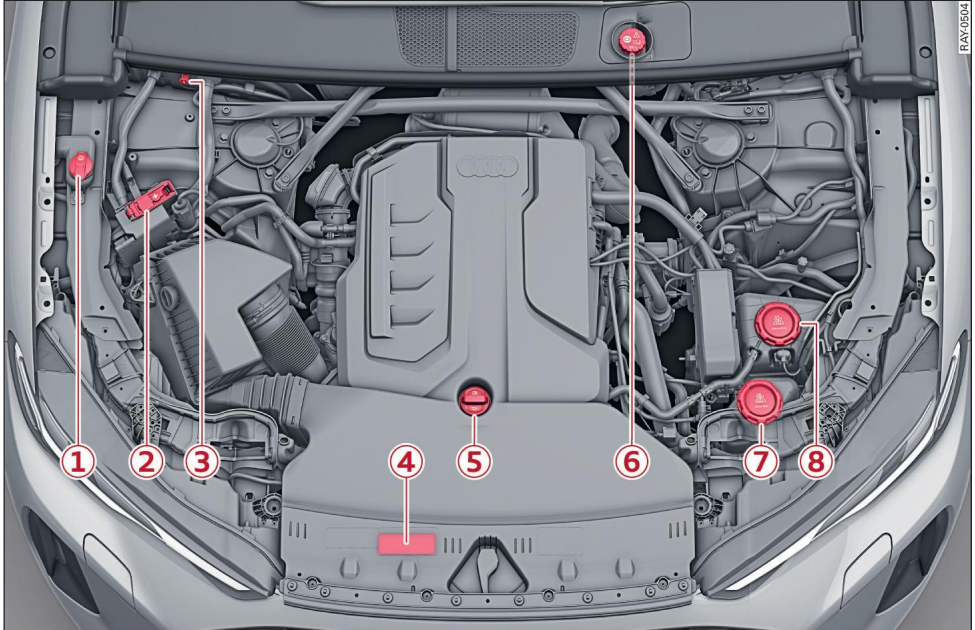


Fig. 120 Engine compartment layout: Example

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.

- ① Windscreen washer container (☼) ⇒ page 248
- ② Jump-start terminal: (+) under a cover ⇒ page 247, *Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇒ page 271, *Jump-starting*
- ③ Jump-start terminal: (-) with hexagon head ⇒ page 247, *Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇒ page 271, *Jump-starting*
- ④ Sticker for engine oil specification ⇒ page 238
- ⑤ Engine oil filler cap (⛽) ⇒ page 239, *Checking the engine oil level*

- ⑥ Brake fluid reservoir (Ⓢ) under a cover ⇒ page 244
- ⑦ Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid technology: Coolant expansion tank for electrical components (⛶) ⇒ page 242
- ⑧ Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine (⛶) ⇒ page 242

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir and the engine oil filler cap may be different on some engine and country versions.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

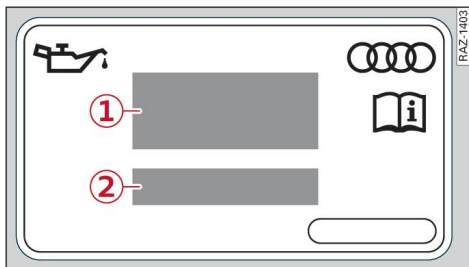


Fig. 121 Engine oil sticker

- ① Engine oil standard
- ② Engine oil viscosity

If you have to top up the engine oil, use one of the oils that meet the engine oil standard specified on the sticker ⇒ Fig. 121. The sticker with the specified standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇒ page 237, Fig. 120. If you use this oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

- Applies to petrol engines: Standards: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.
- Applies to diesel engines: Standards: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.

Audi recommends having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

⚠ CAUTION

Audi recommends that you use the types of engine oil that have been formulated to conform to the corresponding VW standard. Using engine oil that does not meet these quali-

ty requirements may cause damage to the engine. In an emergency, 0.5 ltr. of engine oil corresponding to the standards specified above may be used as an exception.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

🛑 Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇒ page 239.

- If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇒ page 240. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
- If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

🛑 Please add oil immediately

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the oil level ⇒ page 239 and top it up immediately ⇒ page 240.

🛑 Please add max. x ltr. oil. You can continue driving

Add the amount of oil shown soon ⇒ page 240.

🛑 Please reduce oil level

The engine contains too much oil – risk of damage to the catalytic converter and engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the engine oil level adjusted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

🛑 Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

🛑 Oil system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Please warm up engine

It is possible for fuel to enter the engine oil, especially at low outside temperatures. The temperature of the engine oil needs to be high enough so that the fuel in it can evaporate.

Drive in transmission position S.

Run the engine at high rpm speeds but avoid using full throttle.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes; however it is possible that the indicator lamp may not go out during this period. Repeat the procedure at your convenience.

If the indicator lamp does not disappear after several runs, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

When responding to the message  **Please warm up engine**, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

Checking the engine oil level

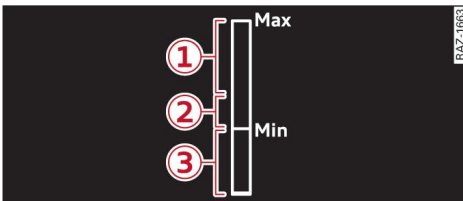


Fig. 122 Centre display: Checking engine oil level

Areas of the oil level display ⇒ Fig. 122.

Please refer to ⇒ .

①	If the display is in this area, the engine oil level is correct.
②	If the display is in this area, you could top up the engine oil.
③	If the display is in this area, you must top up the engine oil.

The engine oil level should be inside the top permissible area when the vehicle is subject to par-

ticularly high loads, such as during long motorway trips in the summer or when driving over mountain passes.

Checking the engine oil level in the MMI

You can check the engine oil level on the MMI.

– You can call up the engine oil level via the **Car** menu ⇒ page 25.

If the oil level is not shown, carry out the following steps:

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the warm engine.
- Switch on the ignition again without starting the engine.
- Wait for about 5 minutes for the engine oil to drain back out of the engine into the sump.
- You can call up the engine oil level via the **Car** menu ⇒ page 25.
- Read off the oil level on the display.

Information on the oil level display

The oil level shown on the centre display (MMI) is intended solely for information purposes. An oil level warning will appear in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too low. Add more oil ⇒ page 240, *Topping up the engine oil*.

Information on engine oil consumption

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before a journey.



CAUTION

There is a risk of engine damage if the engine oil level is too low or too high.

Topping up the engine oil



Fig. 123 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (example)

- Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.
- ▶ Switch off the engine.
 - ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 236.
 - ▶ Unscrew the cap  from the oil filler opening
⇒ Fig. 123.
 - ▶ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil
⇒ page 238.
 - ▶ Screw the filler cap back on.
 - ▶ Close the bonnet ⇒ page 236.
 - ▶ Switch the ignition on again after two minutes and read off the current oil level on the MMI
⇒ page 239, *Checking the engine oil level*.
 - ▶ Applies when using engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard: Add a little more engine oil if necessary.

 **WARNING**

- Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
- The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

 **CAUTION**

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

 **For the sake of the environment**

- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Cooling system

Coolant

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40 % max. 45 %	min. -25 °C (-13 °F)
Cold regions	min. 50 % max. 55 %	max. -40 °C (-40 °F)

**CAUTION**

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- Adjustments to the amount of coolant additive to suit colder temperatures must always be carried out by a qualified workshop; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The vehicle has several coolant circuits that can only be filled by a qualified workshop that has the necessary special tools.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only clean, ideally distilled water and have the coolant concentration brought back up to the correct level as soon as possible with the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of engine damage! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

**CAUTION**

- Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek professional assistance.

Driver messages about the cooling system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Coolant temperature: too high! Please switch off engine**

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Wait approx. 15 minutes and then restart the engine. Do not drive on if the indicator lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

**Coolant temperature: high. Please adapt driving style**

You can continue driving. The air conditioner output will be restricted. The performance may be restricted. Continue driving in a moderate style or allow the engine to idle until the indicator lamp disappears. If the indicator lamp still does not disappear, do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

**Cooling system: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a fault in the cooling system. Do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 242, Checking the coolant level*. If the indicator lamp disappears after the coolant level has been checked and coolant has been added if necessary, you can continue driving. Do not drive on if the indicator lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

Checking the coolant level

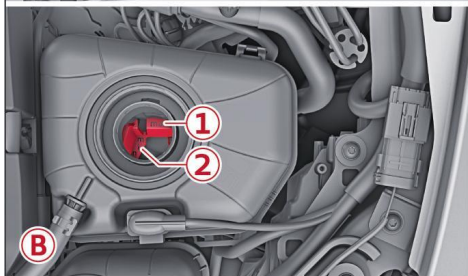
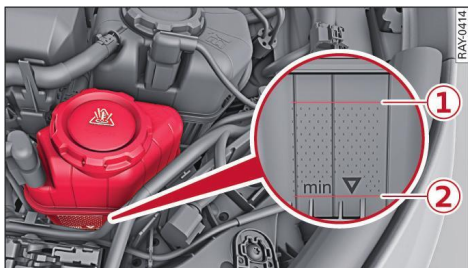


Fig. 124 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine. (A) marks on expansion tank, (B) marks inside coolant tank (visible when cap is opened – risk of scalding!)



Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid technology:

Fig. 125 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank for electrical components

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 235, Safety information on the engine compartment.*

Your vehicle may have two separate coolant expansion tanks depending on its equipment
⇒ *page 237, Fig. 120.* One expansion tank is for the combustion engine (black cap) ⇒ *Fig. 124* and the other one is for the electrical components (blue cap) ⇒ *Fig. 125.* Please refer to the safety information ⇒ .

Preparations before checking the coolant level

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch the vehicle off. (The ignition must remain switched off throughout the process of checking and topping up the coolant.)
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ *page 236.*
- ▶ Applies to 4-cylinder petrol engine: Wait for at least 15 minutes after switching off the engine; otherwise the coolant level reading may be incorrect.
- ▶ When the coolant is cold, the coolant level should be between marks 1 and 2 ⇒ *Fig. 124* or ⇒ *Fig. 125.* The coolant level may initially be slightly above the top mark 1 on new vehicles. This may also be the case if the engine is warm.
- ▶ You can read the coolant level on the **outside** ⇒ *page 242, Checking the coolant level based on marks on the outside* or **inside** ⇒ *page 242, Checking the coolant level based on marks on the inside* of the coolant expansion tank.

Checking the coolant level based on marks on the outside

- ▶ Read the coolant level on the outside of the expansion tank (A) ⇒ *Fig. 124* or ⇒ *Fig. 125.*
- ▶ Please read the information on ⇒ *page 240, Cooling system* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.

Checking the coolant level based on marks on the inside

Applies to: coolant expansion tank for combustion engine

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 235, Safety information on the engine compartment.*

- ▶ Wait for the engine to cool down.
- ▶ Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- ▶ Carefully unscrew the black cap for the affected coolant circuit (A) ⇒ *Fig. 124* by turning it anti-clockwise ⇒ .
- ▶ Read the coolant level on the inside of the expansion tank (B) ⇒ *Fig. 124.*
- ▶ If you did not need to top up the coolant, screw the black cap on clockwise until you feel the second point of resistance.

- Please read the information on ⇒ *page 240, Cooling system* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.

Topping up the coolant

Important: A visible amount of coolant must remain in the coolant expansion tank ⇒ .

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive. Only use non-distilled water in an emergency. Always use clean water.

Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid technology: The caps for the two coolant expansion tanks must not be swapped over ⇒ .

Coolant circuit for combustion engine: black cap ⇒ *Fig. 124*

Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid technology: Coolant circuit for electrical components: blue cap ⇒ *Fig. 125*

- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank you intend to open with a large, thick cloth.
- Carefully unscrew the cap for the affected coolant circuit ⇒ *Fig. 124*  or ⇒ *Fig. 125* by turning it anti-clockwise ⇒ .
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇒ *page 240* up to mark .
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on clockwise until you feel the second point of resistance.



WARNING

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the vehicle and allow the cooling system to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ *page 235, Safety information on the engine compartment*.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure.

Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.

- When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
- The coolant and coolant additives can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.



CAUTION

Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage. In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.

- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- If there is a visible amount of coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning/indicator lamp  /  comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.
- If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.
- If you use non-distilled water, the chemicals that it contains can cause serious corrosion damage to the engine – risk of engine damage!
- If you have used a large quantity of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 ltr.) in an emergency, drive directly to a qualified workshop and have the coolant changed.
- Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid technology: The caps for the two coolant expansion tanks must not be swapped over – risk of engine damage! Black cap for combustion engine ⇒ *Fig. 124*, blue cap for electrical components ⇒ *Fig. 125*.

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid



Fig. 126 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

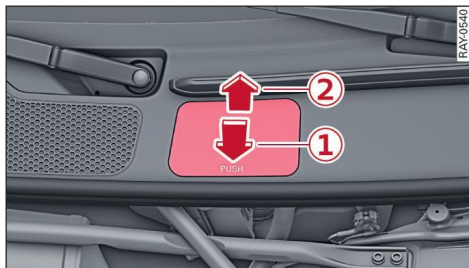


Fig. 127 Engine compartment: Removing cover for brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 235, *Safety information on the engine compartment*.

Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath a cover in the engine compartment on the driver's side.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 236.
- ▶ Remove the cover below the windscreen on the driver's side. To do so, press on the cover ① and lift it out ⇒ Fig. 127.
- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ page 237. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Fit the cover securely again below the windscreen. First guide the cover in centrally until it can be swung back and forth slightly. Then press the cover down towards the rear until it engages.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Having the brake fluid changed

The brake fluid is changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by a qualified workshop. The qualified workshop will inform you of these intervals.

⚠ WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ ⚠ in *Driver messages about brake fluid* on page 245.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
- If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely. The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

⚠ CAUTION

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ ⚠ in *Driver messages about brake fluid* on page 245.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come in contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Driver messages about brake fluid

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.



WARNING

If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.



CAUTION

If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.

Electrical system

Driver messages about the electrical system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning lamp  /  lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

The steering wheel may also vibrate when the driver message appears. Stop the vehicle safely and do not continue driving. You should also switch off the vehicle ⇨ . Seek professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

It will not be possible to restart the vehicle once you have switched it off. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

- If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.
- If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch the vehicle off and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Battery

General information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ .

Several batteries using different technologies are fitted in your vehicle:

- 12-volt vehicle battery (e.g. for basic supply)
⇨ *page 247, Safety information on batteries*

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The 12-volt battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be re-stored when you activate the drive system.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues ►

to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total 12-volt battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇒ *page 247*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12-volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Replacing the battery

The following description applies to the 12-volt vehicle battery. Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, please enquire about the electromagnetic compatibility, capacity and the required maintenance, performance and safety features of the new 12-volt vehicle battery before purchasing it from your qualified workshop. The gas vent on the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The gas vent on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.

When replacing the 12-volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12-volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!

- Using a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications or dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can cause short-circuits or fires. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
- Only maintenance-free and leak-proof 12-volt vehicle batteries that have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery may be used.



CAUTION

- If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12-volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇒ *page 247*, *Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
- If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications set by Audi, or that has a battery capacity that is too low, the vehicle's certification for use on public roads is void and thus also the vehicle's registration ⇒ ⚠.



For the sake of the environment

- ♻ Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇒ *page 290*, *Information on waste disposal*.



WARNING

- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as

Safety information on batteries

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.
	12-volt vehicle battery. High-voltage component. Improper handling can cause short circuits ⇒ in <i>General information on batteries on page 246</i> .
	With the exception of jump-starting and charging the 12-volt vehicle battery, all work on the 12-volt vehicle battery must be performed by a qualified workshop ⇒ in <i>General information on batteries on page 246</i> ⇒ in <i>General information on batteries on page 246</i> .
	Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. First aid: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately.
	Always wear safety glasses.
	If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.
	Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!

WARNING

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
- The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

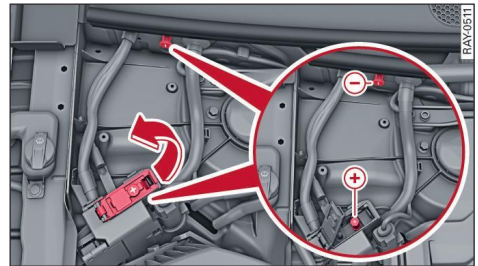


Fig. 128 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please read the safety information ⇒ *page 235*, *Safety information on the engine compartment*, ⇒ in *General information on batteries on page 246* and ⇒ .

Important: Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V**. The battery cables remain connected.

The terminals for the charging cables are located in the engine compartment. The earth point is always on the vehicle's body.

- Switch off all electrical equipment and the vehicle.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ *page 236*.
- Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇒ *Fig. 128*.
- Carefully and correctly connect the charger cables (according to the manufacturer's instructions for the battery charger) to the positive terminal and then to the earth point .
- Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.

- ▶ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging
⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▶ Now disconnect the charger cables. First from the earth point ⚡ and then the positive terminal ⚡.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Close the bonnet ⇒ *page 236*.

Information on charging

- Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.
- Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

WARNING

- Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- Charging cables or jump leads for the negative terminal must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Only use the earth point on the vehicle body in the engine compartment ⇒ *page 247*.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
- Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!
- If you notice that the insulation on the positive terminal around the metal housing is

damaged, do not charge the vehicle or use the positive terminal to jump start the vehicle, as there is a risk of a short circuit or fire! Please contact a qualified workshop.

Windscreen washer system

Filling the windscreen washer system



Fig. 129 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 235, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The container for the windscreen washer  contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system
⇒ *page 237*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇒ *page 288*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets, or ideally, distilled water. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Driver messages about the windscreen washer system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please add washer fluid

With the vehicle switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system ⇒ *page 248* and ⇒  in *Filling the windscreen washer system on page 248*.

Service interval display

Using service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder:** After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. Your own personal driving profile is used to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.



WARNING

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.



CAUTION

- Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
- Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

Introduction

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- ▶ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▶ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▶ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▶ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▶ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▶ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.



WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes them to overheat. This can cause a tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.



CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in

rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

- Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

Information on tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
 60 Height-to-width ratio in %
 R Code for tyre type: radial
 16 Rim diameter in inches
 92 Load index
 H Speed rating

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

DOT ... 2224 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2024.

AO RE, or R0

Tyres with the marking "AO", "RE" or "R0" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

Information on new tyres or wheels

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same dimensions, type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇒ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇒ ⚠.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document ¹⁾). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the drive-line could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds.

⚠ WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from

the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.

- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
- If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

Information on tyre wear / damage



Fig. 130 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under-inflated or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5000 km – 10000 km.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the ►

¹⁾ COC = Certificate of conformity

tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇒ *Fig. 130* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth¹⁾ is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇒ .

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇒ *page 271*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.



WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through

corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Information on tyre pressure

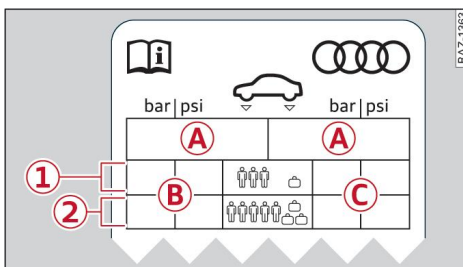


Fig. 131 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇒ *Fig. 131* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

- A** Tyre size
- B** Tyre pressure for the front wheels
- C** Tyre pressure for the rear wheels
- 1** Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded
- 2** Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting **1**. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressures to the specified maximum **2** ⇒ .

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇒ *Fig. 131* for the correct tyre pressures.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- Then store the new tyre pressures on the centre display ⇒ *page 256*.

¹⁾ Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

**WARNING**

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Under-inflation, high speeds and heavy loads require the tyres to flex more, which causes them to overheat. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

**For the sake of the environment**

Under-inflated tyres will increase the energy consumption.

Information on wheel bolts and rims**Wheel bolts**

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange or bolted trim parts consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇒ *page 271, Finishing the tyre change*.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.

– Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!

Information on winter tyres

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ❄ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

- ▶ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- ▶ Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- ▶ Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇒ ⚠ in *Introduction on page 250*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- ▶ After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇒ *page 252*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

**For the sake of the environment**

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce energy consumption.

Information on snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions (snow and ice).

- ▶ Applies to vehicles without four-wheel drive: Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.

Wheels

- Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: Snow chains can be used on the rear wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

Applies to: vehicles without four-wheel drive

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
7Jx17 ^{a)}	27 mm	215/70

a) Only ladder track chains may be used.

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
7Jx17	27 mm	215/70
7Jx18	34 mm	235/60
7Jx19	34 mm	235/55

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 12 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇒ *page 117*.

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

 **WARNING**

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

 **CAUTION**

– Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

– If there is a malfunction in the air suspension, you must NOT drive with snow chains as the vehicle is extremely low on the road. Driving with snow chains could cause severe damage to the wheel housings and other parts of the vehicle.

Information on low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇒ *page 252*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Loose wheel warning

Introduction

Within the limits of the system, the loose wheel warning in the instrument cluster warns you if one or more of the wheels is no longer properly secured. The system makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the vibration of the individual wheels. If the system detects one or more loose wheels, the driver is alerted by a warning lamp  and a message in the instrument cluster. If only one wheel is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Please note that the loose wheel warning may fail if there is an ESC fault. When driving with snow chains, the warning may be triggered erroneously or a system malfunction may occur.



WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

- If a driver message is displayed, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the wheel bolts.
- Check your wheels for damage and have any damaged wheels inspected and/or replaced by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the driver message may not appear immediately.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the wheel bolts are properly secured.

Driver messages about the loose wheel warning

The following driver messages may appear:



Wheel bolts loose. Please stop vehicle safely and check all wheel bolts.

Loose wheel warning for at least one of the wheels ⇒  in *Introduction on page 255*. Use the box spanner from the vehicle toolkit to check the wheel bolts of all the wheels right away. Have the tightening torques checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution. For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇒ *page 271, Finishing the tyre change*.



Wheel check active. Please drive on carefully

After a driver message has been displayed and you have checked the wheel bolts, the system will check the wheels as you drive. This may take a few minutes.



Loose wheel warning: fault. See owner's manual

A system fault has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ *page 254*.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Introduction

Within the system limits, the tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The system makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp  and a message on the instrument cluster. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position. The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to “Audi Genuine Tyres” ⇒ *page 250*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

Each time tyre pressures are changed (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa) on your vehicle, or after the tyres are changed, you must store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 256*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *page 252, Fig. 131*.

Each time tyre pressures are changed (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa) on your vehicle, or after the tyres are changed, you must store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 256*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *page 252, Fig. 131*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.

- The tyres have suffered structural damage.
- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇒ *page 256*.
- Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

Please note that the tyre pressure loss indicator may fail if there is an ESC fault. When driving with snow chains, the warning may be triggered erroneously or a system malfunction may occur.

WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Driver messages about the tyre pressure loss indicator

If the indicator lamp  lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇒  in *Introduction on page 256*. Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 256*.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

The following driver message may also be displayed:

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If **TPMS** appears and the indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the vehicle or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇒ *page 256*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Please observe the important information and notes ⇒ *page 255*.

Storing tyre pressures in the tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the centre display.

- ▶ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ *page 252*.
- ▶ Switch the vehicle on.
- ▶ Select:  > Car > **Servicing** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Function of the tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system keeps a check on the tyre pressures on the four wheels while you are driving.

The system uses sensors to measure temperatures and pressures in the tyres. The sensors transmit the data to the control unit by radio.

The tyre pressure monitoring system displays the current pressures and temperatures of the tyres ▶

on the centre display while the vehicle is moving ⇒ *page 257*. In addition, it compares the current tyre pressures with the stored tyre pressures and warns you via the driver information system if it detects a discrepancy ⇒ *page 257*.

The system cannot check whether the stored tyre pressures correspond to the recommended tyre pressures for your vehicle. You must store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 258*:

- after every adjustment to the tyre pressures, e.g. after changing the laden weight of your vehicle,
- after changing a wheel, or
- when using wheels with new wheel sensors.



WARNING

- The tyre pressure monitoring system helps the driver to monitor the tyre pressures. However, it is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are at the correct pressure.
- Never re-adjust the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot. This can cause serious damage to the tyre or even a blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- Under-inflated tyres flex more than they should. This causes them to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot warn you of tyre damage or defects that could lead, for example, to a tyre blow-out. Perform a regular visual check of your tyres.



Note

- The sensors and valves do not have to be detached or replaced when fitting new tyres. Only the valve core needs to be replaced, and if necessary the valve and the electronic components in the wheel. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
- After using the tyre repair kit, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction. Have the sensors replaced by a qualified workshop.

Displaying tyre pressures and temperatures

Important: The vehicle must be moving.

- Select: > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator** > **Display tyre pressures**.

The current tyre pressures are displayed in green, yellow or red on the MMI:

- **Green:** The tyre pressure is roughly the same as the reference value.
- **Yellow:** The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value.
- **Red:** The tyre pressure is much too low compared with the reference value.

The reference value is the last stored tyre pressure value ⇒ *page 258*.

Bear in mind that the tyre inflation pressure is also influenced by the temperature of the tyre. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly.



WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ *page 256*.



Note

The tyre pressures and temperatures are not shown in the display when the vehicle is stationary or during the initialisation phase. Horizontal dashes -.- will appear instead of the pressure and temperature figures.

Driver messages about the tyre pressure monitoring system

If the indicator lamp lights up, the tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value. Adjust the pressure of the relevant tyre(s) at the next opportunity and store the pressures ⇒ *page 258*.

Flat tyre! Safely stop vehicle. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the tyre pressure has reached a critical value compared with the reference value.

Avoid unnecessary braking and steering

manoeuvres. Adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyre(s). If it is possible to continue driving, you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the defective tyre(s) replaced immediately.

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp **TPMS** appears after you have switched the vehicle on or while you are driving and the indicator lamp  flashes for approximately one minute and then remains lit, there is a fault in the system. This fault can have the following causes:

- If the display appears at the end of the initialisation process, this means that the system cannot detect the wheel sensors required to monitor the pressures. This can happen if one or more of the tyres fitted does not have a sensor or the sensors are incompatible.
- One of the wheel sensors or another component may not be working.
- Snow chains interfere with the signals transmitted by the sensors and can prevent the system from functioning properly.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system may be inoperative due to radio interference.
- Radio systems operating on the same frequency, such as radio headphones or two-way radios inside the vehicle, produce strong electromagnetic fields which cause temporary interference.

The indicator lamp **TPMS** and the message will disappear as soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system is available again. If the fault persists and the indicator lamp **TPMS** stays on, you should drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ page 256.

Storing tyre pressures in the tyre pressure monitoring system

To enable the tyre pressure monitoring system to work reliably, it is important to store the correct pressure settings.

You should always store the tyre pressures if new sensors have been fitted or after changing the pressures, such as when carrying a different load.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ page 252, Fig. 131. Only adjust and store the pressure of the tyres when they are at approximately ambient temperature. If the tyre temperatures are higher than the ambient temperature, the pressures should be increased by approx. 0.2 bar above the pressures specified on the tyre pressure sticker.
- Switch the vehicle on.
- Select:  > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now.**
- If the new tyre pressures do not appear on the centre display, you will need to drive for about 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels can be received again.

During this initialisation phase, -.- will be shown on the pressure and temperature display and some functions of the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be available. The system will warn you only if one or more tyre pressures are below the minimum reference pressure.

Tyre pressure: wheel change detected.

Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the system has detected that the sensor positions have changed because of a wheel change or that new sensors have been fitted. Store the new tyre pressures.



WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ page 256.

Information on run-flat tyres

Run-flat tyres have reinforced sidewalls which protect the tyre in the event of a loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure loss indicator or the tyre pressure monitoring system shows a loss of pressure in one or more tyres, you can continue driving for at least 30 km if your vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the damage repaired.

It is no longer possible to continue driving with run-flat tyres in the following situations:

- If damage to the tyres (e.g. tears in the sidewalls) becomes apparent.
- If severe vibrations occur, or if the tyre starts overheating and gives off smoke.
- If one of the tyres has been severely damaged in an accident, etc. In this case, there is a risk that parts of the tread may be thrown off and cause damage to important vehicle components.
- If the electronic stabilisation control (ESC) is out of operation or is triggered continuously.
- If the tyre pressure loss indicator is out of operation.

If you cannot continue driving, even with run-flat tyres, please seek professional assistance.



WARNING

Run-flat tyres may only be used on vehicles which were originally equipped with this type of tyre.

- The vehicle must have a suitable suspension system and a factory-fitted tyre pressure loss indicator.
- The unauthorised use of run-flat tyres can cause an accident or damage your vehicle. Ask your qualified workshop whether, and if so which, run-flat tyres can be used on your vehicle.
- When using run-flat tyres, it is important that all four wheels have run-flat characteristics. Do not fit normal tyres in combination with run-flat tyres!

- If you cannot avoid driving the vehicle with a deflated tyre or with insufficient tyre pressure, observe the following:
 - Do not drive faster than 80 km/h – higher speeds can cause an accident. Please observe any other applicable laws in the country in which you are travelling.
 - Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering – risk of accident.
 - Vehicle handling could be impaired.
 - If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.
- Have damaged tyres replaced and the rims checked for damage by a qualified workshop.
- The driver remains responsible for the safety of the vehicle and for restoring the correct tyre pressure and having defective parts replaced. For these reasons you should always adjust your driving to suit the circumstances.



Note

- Run-flat tyres can be identified by the marking “AOE”, “REO” or “ROE” on the sidewall.
- The tyre repair kit ⇒ *page 267* can be used for run-flat tyres.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

Introduction

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid or bonnet, or the sunroof, tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors or camera lenses. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sunroof are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the matt paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with plenty of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle when it is switched on – risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when

cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.

- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors.
- Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
- Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!

- Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
 - Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
 - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
 - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.



For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Information on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have

special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Rubber seals	Dirt/deposits	Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Frost	Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products
Paintwork	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
	Fuel overflow	Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Further information on cleaning the exterior:

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.

- The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)}

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} (allow to dry before retracting)
Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent ^{a)}
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent ^{a)} , dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent ^{a)}
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water



WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle,

which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.



CAUTION

– Headlights/rear lights

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
- **Wheels**
 - Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
 - If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
- **Camera lenses**
 - Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
 - Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.
- **Windows and windscreen**
 - Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
 - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
 - To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
- **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
 - Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
- **Rubber seals**
 - Do not use solvent-based cleaning products – risk of damage!
- **Paintwork**
 - The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
 - Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
 - Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
 - Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

- **Decals**
 - Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
 - Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
 - Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
 - Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.
- **Displays**
 - Before cleaning, ensure that the displays are switched off and cool.
 - The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
 - Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!
- **Control consoles**
 - Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!
- **Seat belts**
 - Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
 - Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
 - If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.
- **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**
 - Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
 - To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
 - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
 - Do not use the seat heating to dry the seats.

- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

– **Natural leather**

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

Mobility

Introduction

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Put on your high-visibility vest.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).


WARNING

Please note the procedure described above. This is for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

High-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the front left door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.


WARNING

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

First-aid kit

The first-aid kit is stowed in the storage compartment in the rear left door.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the first-aid kit may be stowed elsewhere.

Fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

Information for the Republic of Korea: The fire extinguisher is stowed in a bag in the luggage compartment. The fire extinguisher must be stowed in the bag again after use, and secured to the fastening rings.

The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

- Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.


WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Vehicle toolkit/tyre repair kit

The vehicle toolkit, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under the floor in the luggage compartment.

- Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel.

Tyre repair kit

Preparing to repair a tyre

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇒ *page 266*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇒ *page 267*.

Using the tyre repair kit



Fig. 132 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇒ .

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm  ⇒ *Fig. 132*.
- If the wheel rim has been damaged .
- If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre .

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

Information on the tyre repair kit

If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.

Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.

Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.

WARNING

- Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.
- After using the tyre sealant, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction or display incorrect values. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.



For the sake of the environment

-  Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇒ *page 290, Information on waste disposal*.

Tyre repairs

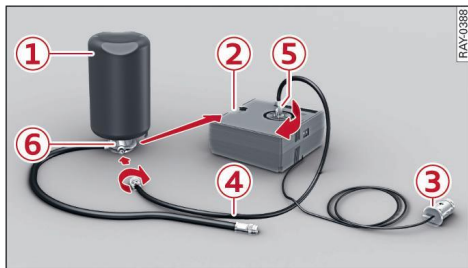


Fig. 133 Components of the tyre repair kit

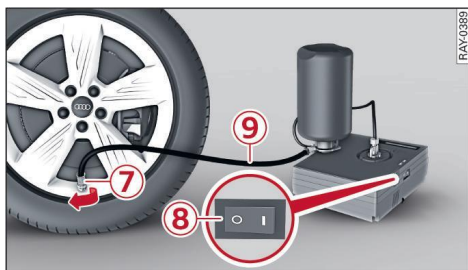


Fig. 134 Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇒ page 266.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

- ▶ Take the connector (3) and the compressor hose (4) out from the bottom of the housing.
- ▶ Screw one end of the compressor hose (4) clockwise into the socket (5) on the compressor¹⁾. Screw the other end onto the flange (6) of the tyre sealant can (1).
- ▶ Place the tyre sealant can (flange facing down) into the opening (2) on the compressor.
- ▶ Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
- ▶ Screw the filler hose (9) onto the valve (7) ⇒ Fig. 134.
- ▶ Insert the connector (3) ⇒ Fig. 133 into a socket in the vehicle.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.

¹⁾ Even if the compressor in your vehicle looks slightly different, it will be operated in much the same way.

Inflating the tyre

- ▶ Move the switch (8) ⇒ Fig. 134 on the compressor to position I.
- ▶ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▶ Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.
- ▶ If this tyre pressure cannot be reached, remove the filler hose. Drive 10 metres forward or backward at low speed so the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturer's safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

Completing the tyre repair

- ▶ Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ▶ After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ▶ If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- ▶ After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

- After repairing a tyre please note the following points:
 - Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.

- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.



For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Changing a wheel

Preparing to change wheels

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required. Audi recommends having the wheel changed by a qualified workshop.

Commercially available tools, such as a jack and box spanner, are required for the wheel change. These should be placed within reach before starting the work.

- ▶ Please refer to the important safety information ⇒ *page 266*.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with air suspension: Select: > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Air suspension: wheel change**.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.



WARNING

When using a jack, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the wheel bolt caps



Fig. 135 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

- ▶ Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle toolkit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇒ *Fig. 135*.
- ▶ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Detaching aero trim



Fig. 136 Wheel: Aero trim

Removing

- ▶ Insert the hook (provided in the vehicle toolkit) in the hole in one of the sections of the aero trim and pull on the section to release the clips ⇒ *Fig. 136*.
- ▶ Release the remaining sections one at a time.
- ▶ Then release the centre of the aero trim.
- ▶ Remove the aero trim.

Installing

- ▶ Press first one section and then the remaining sections into the mounting.
- ▶ Press the centre into the mounting.
- ▶ Check whether the aero trim is flush with the rim.

! CAUTION

Make sure that the aero trim is secured properly so that it does not fall off while you are driving.

Removing anti-theft wheel bolts

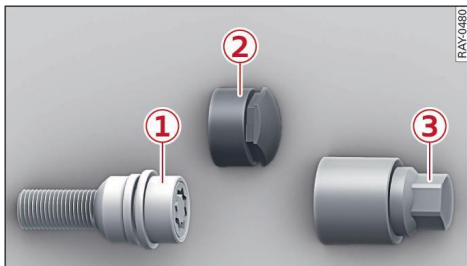


Fig. 137 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To remove the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle toolkit).

- Remove the cap (2).
- Slide the adapter (3) all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt (1).
- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- Loosen the wheel bolt ⇒ *page 270*.

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 138 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt¹⁾.
- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

! WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack.

Raising the vehicle

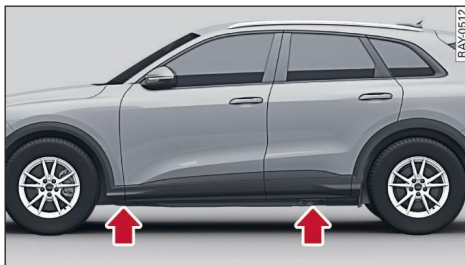


Fig. 139 Sills: markings

- Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇒ *!*
- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ *Fig. 139*. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- Raise the vehicle using the jack until the wheel is slightly clear of the ground.

! WARNING

– Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!

¹⁾ An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇒ *page 270*.

- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The height of the parked vehicle can change as a result of variations in temperature and loading.
- Never switch on the power unit when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

⚠ CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on a wheel

Taking off the wheel

- ▶ Unscrew the slackened wheel bolts using the box spanner and place them on a clean surface.
- ▶ Take off the wheel ⇒ ⚠.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇒ page 271.

- ▶ Ensure that the wheel bolts and threads on the wheel hubs are clean, turn easily and are free of oil and grease.
- ▶ Position the wheel on the hub.
- ▶ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly.
- ▶ Carefully lower the car with the jack.
- ▶ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

⚠ WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇒ page 250.

⚠ CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Using tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

Finishing the tyre change

- ▶ Fit the wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▶ Put the tools and jack back in their correct storage location.
- ▶ Stow the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 85.
- ▶ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressures and store them on the centre display ⇒ page 256 or ⇒ page 258.
- ▶ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▶ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Jump-starting

Important information on jump-starting

Applies to: vehicles with 2.0 TFSI engine with MHEV technology (48 V electrical system)

Please note the information below for vehicles with 2.0 TFSI engine with MHEV technology (48 V electrical system) ⇒ ⚠.

CAUTION

The vehicle battery must not be supplied with power via conventional jump leads using the charging points in the engine compartment.

- You must not jump-start your own vehicle nor any other vehicle; otherwise serious damage to electronic components may result.

Measures if the vehicle is without electrical power

Please observe the following if the vehicle is locked and without electrical power:

- Releasing the driver's door manually
⇒ *page 36, Locking/unlocking the doors manually.*
- Releasing boot lid manually ⇒ *page 49, Releasing the boot lid manually.*

Introduction

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

If the drive system cannot be activated because the 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, you can use another vehicle to jump-start the 12-volt vehicle battery. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ *page 235.*
- Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).

CAUTION

- If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do **not** use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This would cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Jump-starting the vehicle

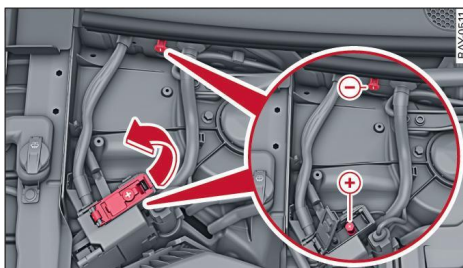


Fig. 140 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

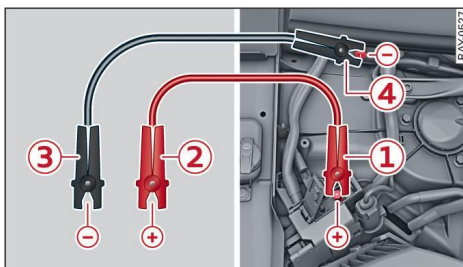


Fig. 141 Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the engine compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇒ *page 245*.

Preparing a jump-start

- ▶ Ensure there is sufficient space between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.
- ▶ Connect the two jump leads in the correct sequence.
- ▶ Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

- ▶ Open the cap on the positive terminal
⇒ *Fig. 140*.
- 1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the jump-start connection ① ⇒ *Fig. 141* on your vehicle.
- 2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

- 3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
- 4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the jump-start connection ④ on your vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▶ Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
- ▶ Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.
- ▶ If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
- ▶ Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks

which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.

- ▶ With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.

Notes on jump starting

If jump starting the vehicle was unsuccessful, seek professional assistance.



WARNING

- Jump leads must never be connected directly to the battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment.
- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
- The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.



CAUTION

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.

Towing away

Introduction

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Switch off the active front assist and the speed limiter or predictive speed limiter when the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry etc., or when the vehicle is being towed. This prevents the respective system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

Information on towing vehicles

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional note on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle must be transported with all wheels off the ground by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter. Contact a towing service. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

or a special car transporter – risk of accident!

- Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.



CAUTION

- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
- For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on [⇒ page 273](#).

Preparations

- ▶ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose [⇒ page 275](#), [⇒ page 275](#).
- ▶ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- ▶ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on [⇒ page 58](#). However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- ▶ Accelerate with particular care.
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▶ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary [⚠](#).
- ▶ Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
- ▶ Release the parking brake [⇒ page 108](#). ▶



WARNING

- There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
- There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck

- ▶ Select transmission position N.
- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

WARNING

- If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
- If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

Fitting the front towline anchorage



Fig. 142 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 266*.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇒ *Fig. 142*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Fitting the rear towline anchorage

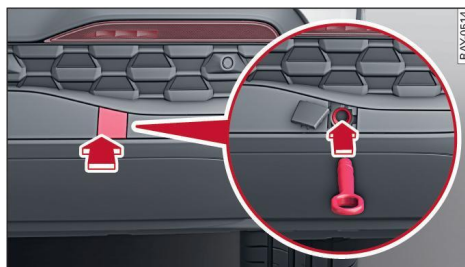


Fig. 143 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 1)

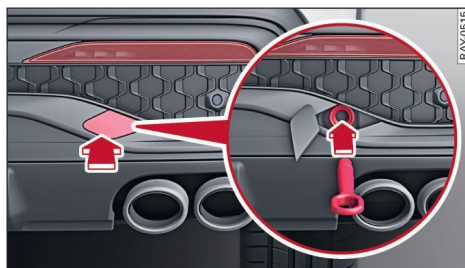


Fig. 144 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 2)

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 266*.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇒ *Fig. 143*/⇒ *Fig. 144*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket

- ▶ Swivel out the towing bracket ⇒ *page 122*.
- ▶ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.



WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!



CAUTION

To avoid damaging the towing bracket, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Fuses and bulbs

Changing fuses

Changing a fuse

Procedure

Fuses are located throughout the vehicle, for example in the engine compartment, in the front cabin and in the luggage compartment.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

- ▶ Switch off the vehicle and all electrical equipment.
- ▶ Refer to the fuse layout tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- ▶ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▶ If fitted, pull the coloured plastic frame out of the fuse carrier.
- ▶ Take the clip from inside the respective fuse box.
- ▶ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▶ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▶ Attach the plastic frame again if removed earlier.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red (narrow)	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40
red (wide)	50

Information on the tables

- The tables show the fuse assignment in each fuse box.
- The tables only include the fuses that you can replace yourself. Should any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop.
- Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables.
- Some of the listed items of equipment are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.



WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!



CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Fuse layout in the footwell



Fig. 145 Left footwell: cover

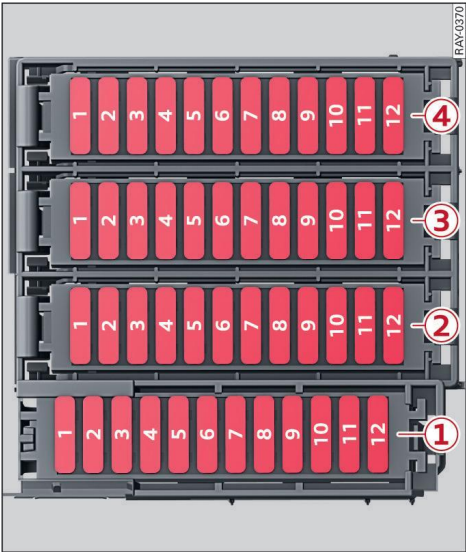


Fig. 146 Right footwell: fuse carrier

Fuse carrier ① (black)	
No.	Electrical equipment
1	Thermal management
4	Thermal management sensors
5	Air conditioner
7	Low-voltage power distribution control unit, starter relay
8	Electrical system control unit, diagnostic connection, interior mirror, front seat electronics
9	Rear USB connections

Fuse carrier ② (beige)	
No.	Electrical equipment
1	Emergency call and communication control unit
3	Airbag
4	Left headlight
5	Drive and chassis control unit
6	Central control unit for driver assist systems
7	Right headlight
8	Wipers
9	Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
10	Diagnostic connection
11	Door control unit, front left
12	Door control unit, rear left

Fuse carrier ③ (black)	
No.	Electrical equipment
1	Automatic gearbox
2	Air conditioning system, thermal management
3	Interior lighting, parking aid
4	Four-wheel drive
5	Gear oil cooler
6	Air conditioner compressor
7	Dash panel
8	Light sensor/rain sensor
9	Control unit for convenience access
10	Drive system control unit
12	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)

Fuse carrier ④ (white)	
No.	Electrical equipment
1	Garage door opener
2	Starter relay
3	Auxiliary heating
4	Headlight washer system, seat heating
5	Front camera for driver assist systems
6	Central locking system
7	Horn, anti-theft alarm system

Fuse carrier ④ (white)	
8	Phone compartment with inductive charging function
9	Radiator fan
10	Belt tensioners (driver's side)
12	Control unit for adaptive cruise control

Fuse layout in the luggage compartment

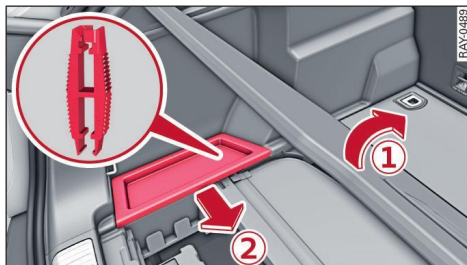


Fig. 147 Luggage compartment, left side: cover

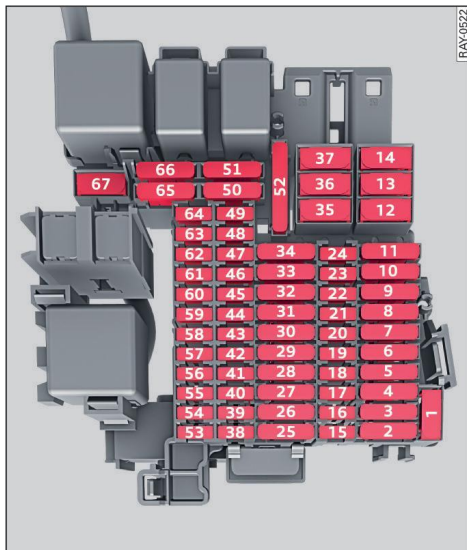


Fig. 148 Luggage compartment, left side: fuse carrier

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Rear window heating
5	Central control unit for convenience system
6	Towing bracket (left lights)
7	Door control unit, rear right

No.	Electrical equipment
8	Central control unit for convenience system
10	Towing bracket (right lights)
11	Door control unit, front right
12	Anti-lock brake system (ABS), electronic stabilisation control (ESC)
17	Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
18	Door control unit (driver's side)
19	Door control unit (passenger's side)
20	Driver activity sensor
21	Control unit for adaptive cruise control
23	Roof electronics
24	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
25	Rear air conditioner control console
26	Emission control
27	Anti-theft alarm system
28	Rear seat electronics
29	Electrical socket for towing bracket
30	Control unit for driver assist systems
32	Infotainment system
33	Central control unit for convenience system
34	Central control unit for convenience system, sockets
36	Air suspension control unit
37	Sound system
39	Lighting for panoramic glass roof
40	Selector lever
41	Boot lid control unit
42	Control unit for access and start authorisation
43	Surround view camera control unit
44	Tyre pressure loss indicator
45	MMI control dial
51	Engine components
52	USB connections
57	Powertrain generator
58	Door control unit
60	Centre console switch module

No.	Electrical equipment
61	Air suspension control unit
62	48 V battery
63	Towing bracket release
65	Seat heating (rear)

Changing a bulb

Information on changing bulbs

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. If a bulb does need to be changed, however, please contact an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Data protection

Information on data protection

Further information can be found online on your regional Audi site or the MMI in your vehicle.

Select:  > Legal.

Image recording

Monitoring of surroundings

Certain vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle and the surrounding area. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to be processed. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the assist systems to control the vehicle.

If the front assist system, for example, detects certain system events, the camera images of the vehicle surroundings may be stored ¹⁾. The length of the recording is limited to a very short time. The stored data are encrypted and can only be read out by a qualified workshop.

Data recorders

Information on vehicle control units

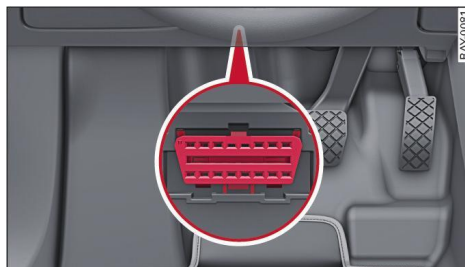


Fig. 149 Driver footwell: connection socket for the on-board diagnostic system

Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. Data in the vehicle can be recorded and stored for a certain period. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

Diagnostic system

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.



WARNING

- Improper use of the connection socket for the diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.

¹⁾ May not be available depending on the country.

- Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

Information on the event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data will be stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal data on the occupants or the accident location will be stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM). The ASM records data that are not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment

and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

- If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
- If the police have made an official request; or
- If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Privacy settings

Introduction

When using online services, data from your vehicle is transmitted to Audi. Data can be transmitted to service providers if this is necessary for the respective online service. Only the data necessary for the online services is transmitted.

Online services may process and transmit personal and location data, as well as enable remote vehicle access.

You can manage the privacy settings for online services in the privacy settings. Services deactivated in the vehicle cannot be activated by remote access.

Managing and checking privacy settings in the vehicle

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- ▶ To adjust main privacy settings, select:  > **Settings** > **Privacy settings**.
- ▶ To customise vehicle-related online services, select:  > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Overview of services**.
- ▶ To customise vehicle-related online services, select:  > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Overview of services** > **Installed infotainment services**. Press on the corresponding button to display all apps.
- ▶ To call up detailed information in the **Privacy settings** menu, press on  or  on the MMI.

Privacy settings are loaded based on the user. Privacy settings are always the driver's responsibility.

Effects of privacy settings

Your vehicle is equipped with the following online services: Vehicle-related online services and infotainment services. These online services can send data from the vehicle to Audi or service providers if this is necessary for the respective online service.

If the **Mobile data** function is switched off, the vehicle-related online services will be deactivated. The infotainment services themselves remain active, but the sending of data from the vehicle is deactivated. This has the following effects:

- Data will continue to be processed locally in your vehicle.
- Local data that has been stored offline can be sent from the vehicle once the **Mobile data** function has been switched on.

You have the following options if you wish to prevent these effects:

- You can set and deactivate individual infotainment services.
- You can select a local user.

Further effects of the mobile data function

When **Mobile data** is switched off in the privacy settings, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certificates, switch the function on at least once a year for at least two minutes. Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet. A symbol in the status bar of the MMI indicates whether the necessary data connection exists.

Effects on certain online services

Changes to the privacy settings do not or only have a small impact on certain online services.

To display the list of these online services, select:  > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Further information**.

Effects on certain data interfaces

Changes to the privacy settings do not impact all data interfaces.

If available, the following wireless interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, Near Field Communication (NFC), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), Integrated Toll Module (ITM), if fitted.

If available, the following wired data transmission options are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: USB, charging communication (high-voltage system), diagnostic system or on-board diagnosis (OBD).



CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

Information on data collection

Depending on the country, Audi can access the vehicle and collect data for the following purposes, for example:

- Data collection for research and development
- Data collection for statistics, analyses and reporting purposes
- Data collection for personalised assessments

The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Further information on data collection can be found on the MMI. Select:  > **Legal**.

If you wish to change the data collection settings, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to change the data collection settings in the privacy settings.

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle

Please read the safety information ⇒ *page 235, Safety information on the engine compartment* and ⇒ *page 270, Raising the vehicle*.

Introduction

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular servicing work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Certain servicing work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Maintenance and repairs

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for servicing work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Risks of technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Further information on technical changes

Depending on the country, making technical changes may invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

Further information on working according to the specifications of the Audi factory

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.



WARNING

- There is a risk of accident if servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly. The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have

work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.

- There is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- Please read the safety information on the engine compartment → *page 235*.

CAUTION

- If servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).
- If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

For the sake of the environment

- You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have an adverse effect on energy consumption.

Accessories and replacement parts

Introduction

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi accessories. Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Have all work performed by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends having all work performed by a qualified Audi workshop.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the **CE** symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

WARNING

- The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

Position for a toll device on the windscreen

Commercially available, radio-based equipment (such as toll devices) can be attached to the inside of the windscreen to the right of the interior mirror base. The surface must be clean and free of dust and grease.

- ▶ Applies to vehicles with heat-resistant glass:
Attach the sticker approx. 6 cm away from the top edge of the glass and approx. 1 cm to the right of the black dot matrix pattern.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with windscreen heating or insulated glass: Attach the sticker to the window panel provided.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

- Select:  > **Car** > **More** > **Keys and VIN**
- At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen
- Stamped on the right side of the engine compartment

Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is affixed to the inside of the vehicle body on the right-hand side near the boot lid.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
Q5 SUV	4717	1900	2155	1625 – 1662
SQ5 SUV	4717	1900	2155	1625 – 1662

Capacities

	Approximate capacities (litres)
Fuel tank	65
AdBlue tank ^{a)}	21.5
Windscreen/headlight washer system	5.6

^{a)} The capacity may be larger for technical reasons when filling from a canister. The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons in cold ambient conditions.

Weights

Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings
The maximum permissible roof load is 75 kg.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different country versions and test methods. The details listed in the vehicle's registration documents therefore always have priority.
In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Technical data for Republic of Korea

You can view the technical data for the Republic of Korea on the following website: www.audi.co.kr.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
Q5 SUV TFSI 150 kW	1910	2460	1285	1285
Q5 SUV TFSI quattro 150 kW	1970	2535	1290	1325
Q5 SUV TDI quattro 150 kW	2030	2595	1325	1380
SQ5 SUV TFSI	2115	2610	1335	1350

Trailer weight

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 100 kg.

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
Q5 SUV TFSI 150 kW	1375	750	2000	2000
Q5 SUV TFSI quattro 150 kW	1415	750	2400	2400
Q5 SUV TDI quattro 150 kW	1470	750	2400	2400
SQ5 SUV TFSI	1440	750	2400	2400

Engine data

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
Q5 SUV TFSI 150 kW	150 / 4300 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	226
Q5 SUV TFSI quattro 150 kW	150 / 4300 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	226
Q5 SUV TDI quattro 150 kW	150 / 3800 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	226
SQ5 SUV TFSI	270 / 5500 – 6300	550 / 1700 – 4000	250

Engine number

The engine number with code letters is located at the following position in the engine compartment:

Engine	Position of engine number
TFSI engine	
150 kW	On the joint between the engine and the gearbox and on a sticker on the timing chain cover

Engine	Position of engine number
270 kW	On a sticker on the left charge air cooler and on the rear of the cylinder block at the top (engine number only visible with engine cover and heat shield removed)
TDI engine	
150 kW	On joint between engine and gearbox.

Other information

Information on brands and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone and Apple CarPlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Driving school mode

You can have the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals shown on the infotainment display. Note that the value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

You can switch driving school mode on/off in the **Car** menu ⇒ *page 25*.

The vehicle will leave driving school mode when you switch to a different app.

Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

You can call up this information online using your vehicle identification number ⇒ *page 288*:

www.audi.de/reach

Information on waste disposal

Introduction

Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers,

qualified workshops or your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

Disposing of batteries

As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin  indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

Disposing of electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner.

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return. ►

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

Disposing of the vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

Recycling information for France



Fig. 150 Recycling information for Owner's Manual



Fig. 151 Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, digital key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

Radio equipment

Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo



Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo



Frequency table

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Audi connect key	13.56 MHz	< 42 dBμA/m @ 10m	33, 37
Audi phone box	LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz	23dBm	37
	NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz	23dBm	37
Bluetooth	2400 – 2483.5 MHz	9.1 dBm	12
Connectivity box/cGW/OCU	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	33 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE TDD B38: 2570 MHz – 2620 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE TDD B40: 2300 MHz – 2400 MHz	23 dBm	12
	5G FDD N1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz	24 dBm	12
	5G TDD N77: 3300 MHz – 4200 MHz	24dBm	12
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	30 dBm	12
	5G TDD N78: 3300 MHz – 3800 MHz	24dBm	12
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	23 dBm	12
Child presence detection (CPD)	57 - 64 GHz	13 dBm	39
Front radar 1	76-77 GHz	30.49 dBm (F5CP42)	35
Front radar 2	76-77 GHz	37.79 dBm (FR5CUEC)	35
Remote control key	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW E.R.P	38
	6 GHz – 8.5 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz (meanPSD)	38
	125 kHz	<29.7 dBμA/m (quasi-peak) @ 10m	38

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Garage door opener	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	0.04 mW ERP	11
	868.00 MHz – 868.60 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
	868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
Anti-theft protection module (RSAD)	6 GHz – 8.5 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz (meanPSD)	38
	2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	< 10 dBm EIRP	38
Tyre pressure monitoring	433.92 MHz	10 mW	14
Radar 1 for surroundings	76-77 GHz	30 dBm (RS5.5)	36
Radar 2 for surroundings	76-77 GHz	30 dBm (RS5.5)	36
Wireless charging	WBT: 125.35 kHz - 129.75 kHz	<55.77 dBµA/m	37
	NFC: 13.56 MHz	<42 dBµA/m	37
Wi-Fi	2400 – 2483.5 MHz	9.8 dBm	12
	5150 MHz– 5250 MHz	17.5 dBm	12
	5725 MHz– 5875 MHz	13.954 dBm	12
Central control unit	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW ERP	38
	125 kHz	<29.7 dBµA/m (quasi-peak) @ 10m	38

Supplier table

Number	Address
11	Gentex Corp. 600 North Centennial Street Zeeland, MI 49464 USA
12	Harman Becker Automotive Systems GmbH Becker-Göring-Str. 16 76307 Karlsbad Germany
14	Huf Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH Gewerbestr. 40 75015 Bretten-Gölshausen Germany
33	Vitesco Technologies France SAS Powertrain Components 1 avenue Paul Ourliac BP 13633 31036 Toulouse Cedex 1 France

Number	Address
35	Robert Bosch GmbH Postfach 1661 71226 Leonberg Germany
36	HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
37	Molex Technologies GmbH Mizarstraße 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany

Number	Address
38	Continental Automotive Technologies GmbH Siemensstr.12 93055 Regensburg Germany
39	VALEO INTERIOR CONTROLS (SHENZHEN) CO., LTD. CUIGANG INDUSTRIAL PARK SIX, HUAIDE, FUYONG STREET BAO'AN DISTRICT, SHENZHEN CITY 518103, GUANGDONG PROVINCE China

 **Note**

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

Additional customer information

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DB106879

1

2

3

4



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมหรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตวิทยุคมนาคม ตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498





โทรคมนาคม
กำกับดูแลโดยกระทรวง
Call Center 1200 (InsWi)

5

根據LP0002低功率射頻器材技術規範 章節3.8.2: 取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材, 非經核准, 公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信; 經發現有干擾現象時, 應立即停用, 並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信, 指依電信管理法規作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

7

Fig. 152 Further customer information

- 1 Singapore
- 2 Russia
- 3 Belarus
- 4 United Kingdom (applies to products placed on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
- 5 Thailand
- 6 Republic of Korea

- 7 Taiwan

United Kingdom market

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following ►

acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14 5AN United Kingdom

Türkiye

TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı¹⁾:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK:
41420 Çayirova/Kocaeli

Importer according to Article 12 of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) on imported radio equipment and electronic devices:

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany



Note

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions can be found online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

Additional customer information for Taiwan

進口商:台灣福斯股份有限公司
地 址:台北市信義區松高路 1號15樓
電 話: 0809-092-834

Fig. 153 Additional customer information

Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea

자동차제작사 : 폭스바겐그룹코리아 주식회사
주 소 : 서울특별시 종로구 청계천로 41 영풍빌딩 14층 03188
연락처 : 080-767-2834 (고객지원센터)
제작결함안내(제50조 관련)
귀하의 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 잦은 고장 등의 문제로 교통사고를 유발할 수 있는 결함이 있다고 판단되면, 자기 및 다른 사람의 안전을 위하여 즉시 폭스바겐그룹코리아 주식회사와 제작결함조사를 시행하는 한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원에 연락하여 주시기 바랍니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원은 소비자 불만사항 등을 접수하여 분석한 후 해당 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 제작결함의 가능성이 있다고 판단되는 경우 제작결함조사를 실시하여 해당 제작사에게 제작결함시정(recall) 등의 조치를 취할것입니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원의 자동차 또는 자동차부품 결함 등 소비자 불만 접수창구는 다음과 같습니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원
전화 : 080-357-2500
인터넷 홈페이지 : 자동차리콜센터(www.car.go.kr)

Fig. 154 Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea

Information on the event data recorder for the Republic of Korea

사고기록장치 세부 안내문 (제30조의3제1항 관련)

이 자동차에는 사고기록장치가 장착되어 있습니다.
사고기록장치는 자동차의 충돌 등 사고 전후 일정시간 동안 자동차의 운행 정보(주행속도, 제동페달, 가속페달 등의 작동 여부)를 저장하고, 저장된 정보를 확인할 수 있는 기능을 하는 장치를 말합니다.
사고기록정보는 사고 상황을 좀 더 잘 이해하는데 도움이 됩니다.

Fig. 155 Event data recorder (Republic of Korea)

¹⁾ Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

Information on emissions and operating noises for the Republic of Korea

This vehicle complies with the emission and noise standards. (The emissions only apply to vehicles with petrol or diesel engine.)

A

- A/C cooling mode 92
- ABS
 - see Anti-lock brake system 116
- Accelerator pedal 102
- Accessories 286
- Active front assist 163
 - Driver messages 166
- Adaptation to right of way
 - see Predictive cruise control . . . 158, 159, 160
- Adaptation to route ahead
 - see Predictive cruise control . . . 158, 159, 160
- Adaptation to speed limits
 - see Predictive cruise control . . . 158, 159, 160
- Adaptive cruise assist
 - Cleaning sensors 261
- Adaptive cruise assist plus 161
 - see also Adaptive cruise control . . . 161
 - see also Lane guidance 146, 161
- Adaptive cruise control 152
 - Predictive cruise control 159
- Adaptive light 57
- AdBlue 230
 - Capacity 288
 - Checking range 230
 - Driver messages 230
 - Introduction 230
- Additional online data 217, 218
- Aero trim, detaching 269
- Airbag system 74
 - Deactivating front passenger's airbag 77
- Air conditioner 91
 - Displays 91
- Air distribution setting 92
- Air recirculation mode 92
- Air suspension 114
- Alarm system
 - see Anti-theft alarm system 37
- All-season tyres
 - see All-weather tyres 253
- All-weather lights 55
- All-weather tyres 253
- Alpine roads 110
- Alternative routes 210
- Android Auto
 - see Smartphone interface 220
- Anti-dazzle interior mirror 61
- Anti-freeze
 - Coolant 240
 - Windscreen washer system 248
- Anti-lock brake system 117
- Anti-theft alarm system 37
 - Driver messages 38
- Anti-theft wheel bolts 270
- Apple CarPlay
 - see Smartphone interface 220
- App overview 22
- Apps 201
 - Legal information 224
 - Software information 224
- App store 201
- Ashtray 84
- ASR
 - see Traction control system 116
- Audi assistant 27
 - Activating 27
 - Help 27
 - Using routines 27
 - Using suggestions 27
- Audi connect
 - Key card 32, 41, 43
 - Keys 32
 - Key (safelock mechanism) 37
 - see also connect 198
- Audi connect emergency call & service 202
- Audi connect navigation & infotainment
 - (plus) 199
- Audi connect remote & control 199
- Audi drive select 113
- AUTO
 - Air conditioner 92
 - Automatic headlights 55
- Automatic air conditioner
 - see Air conditioner 91
- Automatically reset driver assist settings . . . 136
- Automatic music recognition 214
- Automatic route update 210
- Automatic wash and wipe 62
- Auxiliary heating/ventilation 95
- Average consumption 19

Avoiding motorways	210
Avoiding toll roads	210
Axles loads	288

B

Background lighting	59
Functional background lighting	59
Bandages	
see First-aid kit	266
Battery	
Charging (12-volt vehicle battery)	247
General information	245
Safety information	247
Vehicle battery (12-volt)	245
Winter conditions (12-volt vehicle battery)	246
Battery (mobile device)	
Charging via USB	84
Wireless charging	196
Battery, replacing	
12-volt vehicle battery	246
Vehicle keys	42
Better route	
see Automatic route update	210
Bicycle rack (towing bracket)	124
Biodiesel	226, 227
Bioethanol (fuel)	226
Blind	
Roof	51
Blower	92
Bluetooth	222
Audio player	216
Connecting device	222
Deleting a device	223
Device overview	222
Disconnecting a device	223
Setting device use	223
Setting preferred device	223
Bonnet	236
Boost function	102
Boot	
see Luggage compartment	85
Boot lid	45
Activating/deactivating foot gesture control	47
Close button	46
General information	45
Opening/closing (power-operated boot lid)	46

Opening with foot gesture	47
Releasing manually	49
see <i>also</i> Boot lid	46, 47
Box spanner	266
Brake fluid	244
Checking brake fluid level	244
Driver messages	244
Brakes	106
Brake fluid	244
Emergency braking function	109
Hot	110
New brake pads	107
Brands	290
Brightness, adjusting	60
Bulbs, changing	280
Business address	207
Business card	195

C

Call	
Accepting/ending	194
Declining via text message	194, 195
Putting on hold	195
Showing history	194
Starting	194
Switching between calls	195
Cameras	
Areas covered	134
Positions	135
Capacities	288
AdBlue	230
Caps for wheel bolts, removing	269
Car care	
Washing/cleaning	260
Car transport	114
Car wash	260
Catalytic converter	233
Central locking	
Auto Lock	33
Driver messages	35
Central locking switch	34
Central locking system	32
Adjusting settings	33
Boot lid	46
Convenience key	44
Convenience open/close	50

Introduction	32	Coming home/leaving home	
Locking/unlocking doors manually	36	see Entry/exit lights	57
Remote control key	44	Communication lights	57
Safety information	32	Compartments	84
Vehicle key	44	Compressor	266, 267
Centre armrest	67	Conference	195
Certificate of conformity	294	Conference calling	
Certification	291, 294	see Conference	194
Cetane number (diesel)	227	connect	198
Changing bulbs	280	Audi incident assistance	204
Charging station, finding	208	Data plans	199
Chassis number		Emergency call	202
see Vehicle identification number	288	Infotainment services	199
Chemicals	290	Online roadside assistance	204
Child lock		Vehicle control services	199
Driver messages	35	Connection manager	222
Electric windows	35	see also Bluetooth	222
Rear air conditioner console	35	Connection manager menu	222
Rear doors	35	Connections	
Child restraint system	78	see Media	216, 217
Attaching with i-Size	81	Connect key	
Attaching with ISOFIX	81	see Digital key	43
Securing to top tether anchorage	83	Consumer information	285
Securing with seat belt	82	Consumption	19
Cigarette lighter	84	Lowering	104
Cleaning	260	Contact list	195
Cleaning/treating natural leather	263	Downloading contacts	195
Cleaning carbon parts	262, 263	Finding a contact	194
Cleaning controls and displays	263	Sort order	195
Cleaning fabrics	263	Convenience key	32
Cleaning leatherette	263	Convenience close	50
Cleaning microfibre	263	Safelock mechanism	37
Cleaning plastic parts	263	see also Vehicle keys	41
Cleaning rubber seals	262	Convenience open/close	
Closing		Windows/panoramic glass roof	50
Blind (roof)	51	Cooling mode	92
Bonnet	236	Cooling system	
Boot lid	46	Anti-freeze	240
Boot lid with foot gesture	47	Checking coolant level	242
Convenience close	50	Coolant level	242
Panoramic glass roof	51	Topping up coolant	242
Power-operated boot lid	46	Cornering light	57
Windows	49	Cruise control	
Coat hooks	84	Adjusting	156
Cockpit dimming	60	Cruise control system	149
Combustion engine	103	Displays	150
		Operation	151

Cup holders	85	Directional tread (tyres)	271
Customer information regarding radio equipment	294	Directory see Contact list	195
D		Display Cleaning	263
DAB service following	214	Distance warning	137
Data module Serial number (IMEI)	224	Distraction warning	142
Data plans	199	Displays	142
Data protection	283	Doors Child lock	35
Data volume	199	Courtesy lighting	59
Daytime running lights	55	Locking/unlocking manually	36
Deactivating front passenger's airbag	77	Door safelock	37
Declarations of conformity	291	Driver assist menu	136
DEF see AdBlue	230	Driver assist systems Audi drive select	113
Demisting (windows)	92	Detection of vehicle surroundings	134
Destination Adding	210	Driver assist menu	136
Deleting	210	General driver messages	136
Replacing	210	Safety information	132
Showing details	209	System limits	133
Destination, finding	208	System overview	131
Finding POI	208	Driver messages Occupant detection	40
Internet search	208	Drives see Media	216, 217
Setting a destination from the map	209	Drive select see Audi drive select	113
Using search filters	208	Drive system	106
Detection of people in rear cabin see Occupant detection	38	Driving abroad	199
Diagnostic system	281	Driving away	99
Diesel	226	Driving characteristics during assisted driving	157
Fuel	227	Driving program	101, 157
Paraffinic fuel	227	Driving school mode	290
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) see AdBlue	230	Speed display	290
Digital key Activating/deactivating	43	Turn signal display	290
Deleting	43	Driving tips Driving efficiently	104
Displaying	43	Driving through water	111
Key card	43	Hills and gradients	110
Keys	43	Off-road driving	111
Setting up a mobile device	43	DTMF see Tone sequences, sending	194
Sharing	43	Dust filter see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon	91
Digital key card	43		
Dimensions	288		
Dipped headlights	55		

E

- E10
 - see Ethanol (fuel) 226
- Easy entry 67
- Easy entry function 67
 - see also Easy exit function 67
- Easy exit function 67
- Eco cooling mode 92
- EDL
 - see Electronic differential lock 116
- EDR
 - see Event data recorder (EDR) 282
- Efficiency assist 169
 - Predictive cruise control 159
- Electrical socket
 - see Power sources 84
- Electrical system 245
 - Driver messages 245
- Electric motor
 - Coolant 240
- Electric windows 49
 - Malfunction 49, 50
- Electromechanical parking brake 108
- Electronic differential lock 117
- Electronic immobiliser 42
- Electronic stabilisation control 116
- Elevated entry 67
- Embedded SIM card 199
- Emergency assist 162
- Emergency braking function 109
- Emergency call 202
- Emergency key 41
- Emergency running 102
- Emission control system 233, 235
- Energy
 - Lowering consumption 104
- Energy management 104
- Energy recovery 103
- Engine 103
 - Power output 289
 - Running in 103
 - Start/stop system 105
 - Starting/stopping 97
 - Switching off in an emergency 97
- Engine compartment 235
 - Layout 237
 - Opening/closing the bonnet 236
 - Safety information 235
- Engine oil
 - Checking 238
 - Consumption 238
 - Temperature display 18
 - Topping up 238
 - Type 238
 - Warning lamp 238
- Engine stopping
 - see Start/stop system 105
- Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 91
- Entry/exit lights 57
- Environmental tips
 - Filling the tank 228
 - Leaks 236
- ESC
 - Restricting 117
 - Switching off 118
 - see also Electronic stabilisation control 116
- ESC offroad 117
- eSIM
 - see Embedded SIM card 199
- Ethanol (fuel) 226
- EU Directive 2014/53/EU 291
- Event data recorder (EDR) 282
- Exit warning 140
- Experiences 219
- Exterior lighting 55
- Exterior mirrors 60
 - Folding in (setting) 33
- Exterior sound 104
- External aerial
 - see Mobile network coupling aerial 196

F

- Factory settings, restoring 222
- FAME (fuel) 227
- Fastening rings 89
- Fatigue warning 141
 - Displays 141
- Ferry transport 114
- File formats (media sources) 217

Filling the tank	227
Fuel tank flap	228
Releasing tank flap manually	229
Fire extinguisher	266
First-aid kit	266
Flooded roads, tips for driving	111
Floor mat	65
Floor panel	90
Folding the rear seats up/down	88
Foot cooling	93
Foot gesture	
see Boot lid	46, 47
Foot heating	93
Forward gear	
see Transmission position	100
Four-wheel drive	
see quattro	115
Frequency band	
see Waveband	213
Fresh air	93
Front cabin (overview)	10
Front passenger's seat adjustment	
From rear cabin	67
Front window	
see Windscreen	62
Fuel	226
Capacity	288
Lowering consumption	104
Functions on demand	201
Functions requiring a licence	
see Store	201
Fuse layout	
Footwell	278
Luggage compartment	279
Fuses, changing	277

G

Gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front	137
Garage door opener	52
Gear shift indicator	19
Gesture control	20
Calling up the context menu	20
Moving objects	20, 22
Opening/closing a hidden view	20
Glove box	84

Goodbye screen	22
Gradients, driving on	110
Gross vehicle weight	288

H

Handbrake	
see Electromechanical parking brake	108
Handsfree system	
see Telephone	193
Hazard alerts	172
Hazard warning lights	58
HD radio	213
Head-up display	
Adjusting	26
Adjusting brightness	60
Operating	26
Switching on/off	26
Headlight range control	57
Headlights	
Headlight range control	57
Washer system	62
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) .	248
Washing	261
Headlight washer system	
Capacity	288
Head restraints	
Adjusting	70, 71
Removing/installing	71
Heated rear window	93
Heated steering wheel	93
Heating	91
High-visibility vest	266
Hills, driving on	110
Hold function	109
Home address	207
HomeLink	
see Garage door opener	52
Horn	10
Hybrid radio	
see Online station tracking	214

I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems)	81
Ignition	
Switching on/off	97

- Immobiliser
 - see Electronic immobiliser 41
 - Inflation pressures
 - Tyre pressure loss indicator 255
 - Tyre pressure monitoring system 256
 - Tyres 252
 - Infotainment services 283
 - Inspection intervals
 - see Service interval display 249
 - Installation history 201
 - Instrument cluster 17
 - Audi drive select 114
 - Changing layout 18
 - Changing view 18
 - Controls 17
 - Display areas 17
 - Failed 17
 - Gear shift indicator 19
 - Legal information 225
 - Resetting the trip recorder 18
 - Resetting value/memory 17
 - Service interval display 249
 - Instrument lighting 60
 - Interior entertainment 219
 - Interior lights 59
 - Interior mirror 61
 - Interior monitor 37
 - Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 62
 - Introduction
 - Central locking system 32
 - ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) 81
- J**
- Jack 270
 - Wheel change mode 269
 - Jump-starting 271
- K**
- Kerb weight 288
 - Key-operated switch for front passenger's air-bag 77
 - Key card 43
 - see also Audi connect 43
 - Keys 32, 41
 - Convenience open/close 50
 - Digital key 41, 43
 - Digital key card 41
 - Emergency key 41
 - Key card 43
 - Not detected 98
 - Replacement keys 41
 - Replacing battery 42
 - Safelock mechanism 37
 - Unlocking/locking 44
 - Key user 31
 - Kick-down 102
- L**
- Lane assist
 - see Lane departure warning 144, 146
 - see Lane guidance 146, 161
 - Lane departure button 144
 - Lane departure warning 144
 - Cleaning area around camera 261
 - Lane guidance 146
 - Lane guidance button 146
 - see also Lane departure warning 144, 146
 - Lap timer
 - Introduction 176
 - Lap statistics 176
 - Operation 176
 - Last destinations 207
 - Launch control 102
 - Leather, cleaning/treating 263
 - Left-hand traffic 58
 - Legal information 224
 - Apps 224
 - Data module serial number (IMEI) 224
 - Head-up display 224
 - Instrument cluster 225
 - Smartphone interface 225
 - Software information 224
 - Software licences 224
 - System 224
 - Version information 224
 - Lift function 114
 - Lights 55
 - Driving on right/left 58
 - Exterior 55
 - Interior 59

Light sensor/rain sensor		
Headlights	55	
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	62	
Light switch module	55	
Load-sill lowering	87	
Load guard	89	
Local user	30	
Locking/unlocking		
By remote control	44	
In the lock	36	
With the central locking switch	34	
With the convenience key	44	
Lowering rear of vehicle		
see Load-sill lowering	87	
LTE		
see Mobile network coupling aerial	196	
Luggage		
Boot lid	45	
Luggage compartment		
Extending	88	
Floor panel	90	
Power sources	84	
Safety information	85	
Luggage compartment cover, extendible		
Removing/installing	87	
Retracting	87	
Stowing	87	
Luggage rack		
see Roof carrier	90	
Lumbar support	66, 67	
M		
Main beam headlights		
Main beam assist	56	
Maintenance	285	
Maintenance intervals		
see Service interval display	249	
Make-up mirrors	61	
Malfunction, electric windows	49	
Manoeuvre display	210	
Manual gear selection	101	
Manual operation		
Boot lid	47, 49	
Doors	36	
Panoramic glass roof	51	
Map		
Calling up country information	211	
Operation	210	
Performing update	212	
Set map scale	207	
Set orientation	207	
Setting a destination	209	
Setting map colours	211	
MAP		
see Message Access Profile	195	
Map content menu	208	
Massage function	67	
Front	67	
Matrix LED headlights	56	
Matt paintwork, washing	260	
Maximum speed	289	
Media	216	
Additional online data	217	
Bluetooth audio player	216	
Connecting device	216	
Playback	217	
Search	217	
Selecting source	217	
Settings menu	217	
Setting the picture format	217	
Supported formats	217	
Media player		
see Media	216, 217	
Menu: Audi assistant	28	
Menu: Car	25	
Menu: Central locking system	33	
Menu: Digital key	44	
Menu: Interior monitor	37	
Menu: Messages	194	
Menu: Opening/closing boot lid with foot gesture	47	
Menu: Parking aid	136	
Menu: Rear notification sound	35	
Menu: Settings	222	
Message Access Profile	195	
Messages		
see Text messages	195	
Message templates, editing	194	
Microphone input level	194	
Mild hybrid drive	103	

- Mirrors
 Adjusting exterior mirrors 60
 Anti-dazzle setting 61
 Make-up mirrors 61
- MMI
 Adjusting the audio and system volume . . . 24
 App overview 22
 Assigning function to steering wheel button . 24
 Calling up the app overview 23
 Calling up the overview page 23
 Changing the brightness 25
 Changing the direct access panel 25
 Changing the information boxes on the overview page 22, 25
 Creating and managing folders 25
 Customising 25
 Customising the direct access panel 22
 Deleting a downloaded app 22, 25
 Direct access panel 22
 Goodbye screen 22
 Notification centre 22
 Overview page 22
 Quick access 22
 Restarting 24
 Starting up/shutting down 24
 Status bar 22
 Storing/deleting favourites 23
 Switching the displays on/off 24
 Switching the standby design on/off 24
 Symbols 23
 Tab area 22
 User interface 22
- MMI control dial 10, 24
 MMI passenger display 23
 Mobile data 283
 Mobile network coupling aerial 196
 Mobile phone
 see Telephone 193
 Mobile phone tray
 see Phone compartment 196
 Modifications 285
 Motor braking effect
 see Recuperation 103
 Motorway light 57
 Mountain passes 110
- Multi-function steering wheel
 Assigning function to button 24
 Audi assistant 27
 Tuning a radio station 213
- Multi Media Interface
 see MMI 21
- Multi Media Interface (MMI) 21
- Music
 see Media 216, 217
- Mute 24
- myAudi 30, 199
- myAudi navigation 209
- myAudi users 30
- ## N
- Navigation 207
 Alternative routes 210
 Automatic route update 210
 Destination information 209
 Editing route 210
 Home/business address 207
 Last destinations 207
 Manoeuvre display 210
 Map content 208
 Map update 212
 myAudi navigation 209
 Route monitor 209
 Satellite map 211
 Setting a destination 209
 Setting contacts as destination 209
 Settings menu 208
 Showing destination details 209
 Starting route guidance 208
 Stopping route guidance 210
 Traffic information 211
 Using search filters 208
- Neutral 109
 see also Transmission position 100
- Notification centre 22
- NOx catalytic converter
 see AdBlue 230
- Number plate
 Securing 286
- Number plate holder 286

O

Occupant detection	
Driver messages	40
Function limitations	39
How it works	38
Introduction	38
Notifications	40
Settings	40
Setting the notification sound	40
System limits	39
Occupant detection sound, setting	40
Octane rating (petrol)	226
Off-road driving	111
OFF (air conditioner)	92
Oil	
see Engine oil	238
Online manuals	
see Owner's Manual (digital)	7
Online map	
see Satellite map	211
Online roadside assistance	204
Online station tracking	214
Preferred bit rate	214
Opening	32
Blind (roof)	51
Bonnet	236
Boot lid	46
Boot lid with foot gesture	47
Convenience open	50
Fuel tank flap	228
Panoramic glass roof	51
Power-operated boot lid	46
Windows	49
Opening/closing	
see Unlocking/locking	32, 44
Outside temperature display	17
Overtake prevention	158
Overview diagram (front cabin)	10
Owner's Manual (digital)	
Accessing	7
Accessing digital version	7
in myAudi	7
In the infotainment system	7

P

Paddle levers	101
Switching recuperation on/off	104
Paint damage	262
Panoramic glass roof	51
Closing manually	51
Convenience open/close	50
Opening quickly	51
Paraffinic diesel	226
Paraffinic fuel	227
Park assist plus	189
Parking	99
Parking aid menu	136
Parking aids	178
Adjusting entertainment fader when parking	178
Adjusting volume	178
Automatic activation	179
Cleaning sensors/camera	261
Park assist plus	189
Parking space search	187
Rear cross-traffic assist	185
Reversing camera	180
Surround view cameras	180
Trailer view	184
Parking and manoeuvring	178
Parking brake	
see Electromechanical parking brake	108
Parking lights	56
Parking lock	
see Transmission position	100
Parking spaces, finding	208
Particulate filter	233
Passenger display	
see MMI passenger display	23
Pedals	102
Performance (engine)	289
Performing a reset	
see Factory settings, restoring	222
Personal profiles	
see Users	30
Petrol	226
Phone book	
see Contact list	195
Phone compartment	196

- Picture format
 Video 217
see also Picture format 217
- PIN
 Protection 30
- Playback
 Media 217
 Radio 213
- Playing music
see Media 216, 217
- Polishing 262
- Pollen filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 91
- Power-operated boot lid 46, 47
- Power sources 84
- Power steering
see Steering 115
- Predictive control
see Predictive cruise control ... 158, 159, 160
- Predictive cruise control 158, 159
see also Predictive cruise control 158, 159, 160
- Predictive efficiency messages 169
- Predictive speed limiter 149
see also Predictive speed limiter 149
- Preferred image 214
- Preferred online radio bit rate 214
- Privacy settings
see Data protection 283
- Proactive occupant protection 173
 Driver messages 174
 Front 173
 Rear 173
 Side 173
 System limits 173
- Purchased apps and digital services 201
- Purchased functions (functions on demand) 201
- Purchase history 201
- Pyrotechnic components 285
- Q**
 quattro 115
 Selective wheel torque control 117
- Quick access 22
- Quick access bar
 Overview of functions 23
 Symbols 23
- R**
 Radio 213
 Alarm messages 214
 Automatic music recognition 214
 Calling up source menu 213
 Calling up station list 213
 DAB announcements 214
 DAB service following 214
 HD radio 213
 Online station tracking 214
 Operating 213
 Radio text 214
 Search 213
 Setting a frequency 213
 Setting a station 213
 Settings 213
 Traffic announcements 214
 Waveband 213
- Radio announcements 214
- Radio equipment 286, 291, 294
- Radio Equipment Directive 291
- Radio frequency
see Waveband 213
- Radio sticker 287
- Radio traffic announcements 214
- Radio transmitters 286
- Rail transport 114
- Rain sensor/light sensor
 Headlights 55
 Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) ... 62
- REACH (chemicals regulation) 290
- Reading lights 59
- Rear air conditioner console
 Child lock 35
- Rear cross-traffic assist 185
- Rear fog light 55
- Rear lights
 Washing 261
- Rear notification sound, setting 40
- Rear seats 68
- Rear window heating 93
- Recuperation 103

Remote access rights (key user)	31	Running in	
Remote control		New brake pads	107
Garage door opener	52	New tyres	250
Remote control key	32, 41	S	
Convenience open/close	50	Safelock mechanism	37
LED	42	Driver messages	38
Replacement keys	41	Satellite map	211
Replacing battery	42	Scrappage	285
Safelock mechanism	37	Search	
Unlocking/locking	44	Media	217
see also Vehicle keys	41	Radio	213
Repairs	285	Seat belts	71
Replacement keys	41	Cleaning	263
Replacement parts	286	Securing child restraint system	82
Resetting the system		Seat heating	93
see Factory settings, restoring	222	Seats	
Restoring factory settings	222	Adjusting	66
Rev counter	18	Adjusting front seats	67
Reverse gear		Adjusting rear seats	68
see Transmission position	100	Cleaning	263
Reversing camera	180	Folding the rear seats up/down	88
Reversing camera cleaning function, activat-		Head restraints	70
ing	184	Massage function	67
RFID sticker	287	Resetting position	67
Right-hand traffic	58	Seat ventilation	93
Rims	253	Selective catalytic reduction	
Washing	261	see AdBlue	230
Ring tone	194	Selector lever	100
Ring tone volume	194	Self-help	266
Rolling		Selling vehicle (factory settings)	222
Electromechanical parking brake	108, 109	Sensors	
Neutral (N)	100	Areas covered	134
Rolling away	99	Positions	135
Roof		Service interval display	249
see Panoramic glass roof	51	Service intervals	
Roof carrier	90	see Service interval display	249
Roof load	288	Settings	222
Route		Announcements and sounds	222
Alternative routes	210	Bluetooth	222
Editing	210	Central locking system	33
Route monitor	209	Checking software version	223
Setting route criteria	210	Connection manager	222
Route guidance		Date and time	222
Starting	208	Digital key	44
Stopping	210	Interior monitor	37

Languages and keyboards	222	Start/stop system	105, 106
Media	217	Driver messages	106
Navigation	208	Switching off/on	105
Occupant detection	40	Starting with jump leads	271
Opening/closing boot lid with foot gesture	47	Starting (engine)	106
Performing software update	223	Status bar	22
Radio	213	Symbols	23
Rear notification sound	35	Steering	115
Restoring factory settings	222	Audi drive select	113
Software update	223	Steering lock	97, 115
Sound	222	Steering wheel	
Telephone	194	Adjustment	69
Units	222	Electric adjustment	69
Shop		Paddle levers	101
see Store	201	Steering wheel heating	93
Side assist	138	Stopping vehicle	99
Cleaning sensors	261	Storage compartments	84
Side blind		Store	201
Rear doors	61	Stretch net	89
Side lights	55	Sun blind	
SIM card	199	see Panoramic glass roof	51
Smartphone		Sunroof	
see Telephone	193	see Panoramic glass roof	51
Smartphone interface	220	Sun visors	61
Connecting	220	Surround view cameras	180
Legal information	225	Suspension	114
SMS		Audi drive select	113
see Text messages	195	Switching engine off	106
Snow chains	253	Symbols	
Software information		Navigation	207
see Legal information	224	Radio	213
Software update	223	Telephone	194
Software version, checking	223	SYNC (air conditioner)	92
Sort order	195	System	
Source, selecting		Legal information	224
Media	217	Software information	224
Speed control, adjusting	156		
Speed limit display			
see Traffic sign recognition	170		
Speed limiter	149		
Display	150		
Operation	151		
Speed limits			
see Traffic sign recognition	170		
Speed regulation systems	149		
Speed warning	137		
Sport differential	116		

T

Taiwan	295
Tank	
Capacity	288
Technical data	288
Telephone	193
Accepting/ending call	194
Conference	195
Connecting a mobile phone	193

Dialling a number	194	TPMS	
Editing message templates	194	Tyre pressure loss indicator	255
Mobile network coupling aerial	196	Tyre pressure monitoring system	256
Options during a call	194	Track/station, changing	24
Phone compartment	196	Traction control system	117
Playing music	216	Traffic avoidance	
Settings menu	194	see Automatic route update	210
Starting a call	194	Traffic information	211
Switching between mobile phones	194	Free flow of traffic	211
Text messages	195	Traffic light information	175
Wireless charging	196	Displays	175
Temperature setting	92	Traffic sign recognition	170
Tethering		Trailer assist	127
see Wi-Fi	199	Trailer view	184
Text messages	195	Transmission position	100
Text, entering	20	Trip recorder	18
Changing the input language	20	Turning light	57
Changing the input method	20	Turn signals	56
Themes	219	Type plate	288
Tightening torque (wheel bolts)	271	Tyre pressure sticker	252
Tilt angle display	111	Tyres	250
Timer		Changing	269
see Lap timer	176	Directional tread	271
tiptronic		Lettering	250
see Manual gear selection	101	Load index	250
Tire Mobility System (tyre repair kit)	267	Loose wheel warning	254
Toll device	287	Low-profile tyres	254
Tone sequences, sending	194	Manufacturing date	250
Tools	266	Repair kit	267
Top tether anchorage (securing a child re-		Service life	251
straint system)	83	Speed rating	250
Torque		Tyre pressure	252
Engine	289	Tyre pressure loss indicator	255
Wheel bolts	271	Tyre pressure monitoring system	256
Tow-away protection	37	Tyre pressure (towing a trailer)	119
Towing	119	Wear indicator	251
Air suspension	121		
Draw bar weight	119	U	
Rear carrier systems	124	Unlocking/locking	32
Swivelling towing bracket	122	By remote control	44
Towing bracket with square tube	126	In the lock	36
Trailer stabilisation	123	Using the digital key	44
Trailer weight	119, 289	Using the digital key card	44
Towing away	273	With the convenience key	44
Towline anchorage	275	Update (software)	223

- USB connection 84
 - Playing music 216
 - USB stick
 - Types/formats supported 217
 - User management 23
 - Users
 - Calling up user management 23
 - Local user 30
 - myAudi users 30
 - Using another vehicle to jump-start 271
- V**
- Vehicle
 - Dimensions 288
 - Identification data 288
 - Lowering 114
 - Raising 114, 270
 - Securing 99
 - Starting 97
 - Stopping 99
 - Taking out of service 265
 - Tilt angle 111
 - Transporting the vehicle 114
 - Unlocking/locking 44
 - Vehicle-related online services 283
 - Vehicle control services 199
 - see also* Audi connect remote & control .. 200
 - Vehicle hotspot 200
 - Vehicle identification number 288
 - Vehicle keys 32, 41
 - Vehicle sound 104
 - Vehicle toolkit 266
 - Ventilation 91
 - Vents, adjusting 94
 - VIN
 - see* Vehicle identification number 288
 - Voice control function, external 28
 - Volume of announcements, setting 222
 - Volume, changing 24
- W**
- Warning lamps 11
 - Warning triangle 266
 - Washing 260
 - Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 262
 - Waveband 213
 - see also* Waveband 213
 - Waxing 262
 - Weights 288
 - Wheel bolts 253
 - Anti-theft 270
 - Torque 271
 - Wheel imbalance 251
 - Wheels 250
 - Aero trim 269
 - Changing 269
 - Loose wheel warning 254
 - Tyre pressure loss indicator 255
 - Tyre pressure monitoring system 256
 - Washing 261
 - Wi-Fi 199
 - Wi-Fi network 199
 - Window blind
 - see* Panoramic glass roof 51
 - Windows
 - Child lock 35
 - Cleaning/de-icing 262
 - Convenience open/close 50
 - Defrosting 92
 - Electric windows 49
 - Opening/closing 49
 - Windscreen
 - Washing 62
 - Windscreen washer system 62, 248
 - Capacity 288
 - Driver messages 249
 - Windscreen wipers 62
 - Winter conditions
 - Auxiliary heating 95
 - Cooling system 240
 - De-icing windows 262
 - Defrosting windows 92
 - Diesel 227
 - Rear window heating 93
 - Seat heating 93
 - Snow chains 253
 - Steering wheel heating 93
 - Tyres 253
 - Vehicle battery (12-volt) 246
 - Washing the vehicle 260
 - Windscreen washer system 248
 - Winter tyres 253

Wiper blades (front)

Changing	63
Cleaning	63

Wiper blade (rear)

Changing	64
Cleaning	64

Wireless charging 196



Supplement

Q5

The Owner's Manual has been changed.

Topic: Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

Battery

What has changed?

The following information has been updated.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

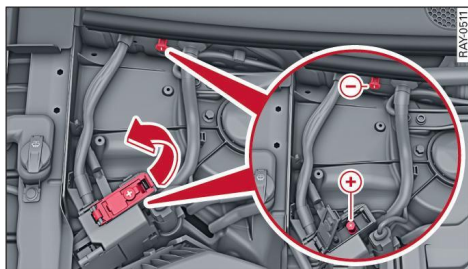


Fig. 1 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please observe the information provided under **Safety information on the engine compartment**, **General information on batteries** in the Owner's Manual as well as the safety information ⇒ ⚠.

To charge the 12-volt vehicle battery, make sure to observe the following requirement 1 or 2 (depending on your vehicle version).

Applies to vehicles with 2.0 TFSI engine with mild hybrid drive (48-volt electrical system): **Requirement 1:** Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V** and with a **maximum charging capacity of 80 A** ⇒ ⚠.

Or

Applies to all vehicles which do not fulfil requirement 1: **Requirement 2:** Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V**.

The battery cables remain connected.

The terminals for the charging cables are located in the engine compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body.

- ▶ Switch off all electrical equipment and the vehicle.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.
- ▶ Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇒ Fig. 1.

- ▶ Carefully and correctly connect the charger cables (according to the manufacturer's instructions for the battery charger) to the positive terminal ⊕ and then to the earth point ⊖.
- ▶ Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- ▶ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▶ Now disconnect the charger cables. First from the earth point ⊖ and then the positive terminal ⊕.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Close the bonnet.

Information on charging

- Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.
- Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.



WARNING

- Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- Charging cables or jump leads for the negative terminal must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Only use the earth point on the vehicle body in the engine compartment ⇒ page 2.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
- Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!



CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with 2.0 TFSI engine with mild hybrid drive (48-volt electrical system)

The vehicle battery must only be charged with max. 80 A of charging current via the charging points in the engine compartment. Otherwise, serious damage to electronic components may result.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right

to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

Supplement

English 09.2024
8MA012720HA



8MA012720HA